

2021

Step Ahead Series

Connect Plus (3) First Term

*Together on
The Right Way*



**Prepared By
A GROUP OF
SPECIALISTS**

**Primary
(3)**

Contents



Units

Pages

Unit (1)

3

Test (1)

32

Unit (2)

34

Test (2)

64

Unit (3)

66

Test (3)

94

Unit (4)

96

Test (4)

128

Unit (5)

130

Test (5)

159

Unit (6)

161

Test (6)

193

Part (2) Story

195





Lesson 1

1

Pages 2-5

A Vocabulary

sports event		حدث رياضي	run		يجري
track		مسار (الممر حول الملعب)	running		العدو - الجري
athlete		لاعب ألعاب قوى	throw		يألق - يرمي
compete		يتنافس	jump		يقفز
competition		مسابقة	long jump		الوثب الطويل
race		سباق	high jump		الوثب العالي
win		يفوز - يكسب	measure		يقيس
winner		فائز - كسبان	distance		مسافة
medal		ميدالية	field		ميدان - ملعب

~~~~~

|           |  |             |                   |  |              |
|-----------|--|-------------|-------------------|--|--------------|
| exciting  |  | مثير        | different schools |  | مدارس مختلفة |
| amazing   |  | مدهش        | hope              |  | يأمل         |
| tired     |  | متعب - مجهد | think             |  | يعتقد        |
| easy      |  | سهل         | wear              |  | يرتدي        |
| difficult |  | صعب         | get               |  | يحصل على     |





|          |                                                                                   |                 |                   |                                                                                     |                     |
|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| happy    |  | سعيد            | hear              |  | يسمع                |
| quickly  |  | بسرعة           | today             |  | اليوم               |
| Who      |  | من              | meter             |   | متر                 |
| How far  |  | ما بُعد (مسافة) | second            |  | ثانية               |
| How high |  | ما ارتفاع       | ball              |  | كرة                 |
| How long |  | ما طول          | as far as you can |                                                                                     | بعيداً بقدر الإمكان |

|      |      |         |      |              |        |
|------|------|---------|------|--------------|--------|
| fast | سريع | faster  | أسرع | the fastest  | الأسرع |
| slow | بطيء | slower  | أبطأ | the slowest  | الأبطأ |
| high | عالٍ | higher  | أعلى | the highest  | الأعلى |
| far  | بعيد | farther | أبعد | the farthest | الأبعد |

### Vocabulary Study

|             |                                                                                            |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| event       | : a thing that happens, especially one of importance.                                      |
| track       | : a path all around the field.                                                             |
| athlete     | : a person who is good at sports and other forms of physical exercise.                     |
| competition | : a contest in which people or teams compete against each other in a particular sport.     |
| race        | : an event in which people compete to know the fastest.                                    |
| win         | : to get a prize or a medal in a competition.                                              |
| medal       | : a metal disk with a design, made as a prize.                                             |
| measure     | : to calculate the distance.                                                               |
| field       | : an outdoor area provided for children to play in, especially at a school or public park. |
| amazing     | : causing great surprise or wonder.                                                        |





Today, we're at the track. There's a big sports event. Lots of athletes from different schools are **competing**.

Look! They are **wearing** red, blue, green, and black.

There are competitions in running, jumping, and **throwing**. I'm watching the long jump. I think the athlete wearing red will win.



I think the athlete wearing the green T-shirt will win.



I think our school will get a medal today!



Will it be a good competition?



It won't be easy today!

## B Structures

◆ What sports do you like?

✎ I like jumping.



## Future Simple Tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

| Affirmative الإيجابيات                    | Negative النفي                            | Interrogative الاستفهام                   |
|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| I<br>He<br>She<br>It<br>You<br>We<br>They | I<br>He<br>She<br>It<br>You<br>We<br>They | I<br>he<br>she<br>it<br>you<br>we<br>they |
| will see                                  | will <b>not</b> see                       | Will see                                  |
| 'll see                                   | won't see                                 |                                           |

→ will + المصدر (The bare verb)

يتكون من

- Our school **will get** a medal today.
- The event **will be** amazing.

★ We use it to express actions that will happen in the future.

★ يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث سوف تحدث في المستقبل.

★ He will win the next race.

★ We sometimes use some words with the future simple as:

★ توجد كلمات دالة على زمن المستقبل البسيط مثل:

- tomorrow غداً - next ..... (month) ..... (الشهر) القادم

★ It will be a good competition **next month**.

★ In the negative form, we use (will not (won't)) before the bare verb.

★ ننفي المستقبل البسيط باستخدام (will not - won't) ثم الفعل في المصدر.

- I **won't go** to school tomorrow.

★ In the interrogative form, we use (will) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the bare verb.

★ عند عمل سؤال على المستقبل البسيط ، نبدأ السؤال بـ (will) أو نضعها بعد أداة الاستفهام مع الفعل في المصدر.

★ Will you go to school tomorrow?

⚡ No, I won't.

★ Will he be tired?

⚡ Yes, he will.

★ What will you do tomorrow?

⚡ I'll go shopping.

» لا تنس أن (will - won't) لابد أن يتبعا بالمصدر.



## (Adjectives) Comparison المقارنة

## ★ Comparative degree:

◆ We use the comparative form to compare two people, two animals or two things.

◆ تستخدم الدرجة الثانية من المقارنة (الصفات) لنقارن بين شخص وشخص أو حيوان وحيوان أو شئ وشئ ..... وهكذا.

- Dina jumped higher than Yara.

- Was Amir faster than Adam?

✽ We add (er) to the short adjective and use the word (than) after it.

✽ نضيف للصفة القصيرة (er) ونضع بعدها كلمة (than من).

✽ لاحظ أن صفة (far) صفة شاذة والدرجة الثانية منها (farther).

- Youssef jumped farther than Seleem.

## ★ Superlative degree:

◆ We use the superlative form to compare more than two people, animals or things.

◆ تستخدم الدرجة الثالثة من المقارنة (الصفات) للمقارنة بين شخص ومجموعة من الأشخاص أو حيوان ومجموعة من الحيوانات أو شئ ومجموعة من الأشياء .... وهكذا.

- Talia ran the fastest.

- Who was the slowest?

◆ We add (est) to the short adjective and use the word (the) before it.

✽ نضيف للصفة القصيرة (est) ونضع قبلها كلمة (the).

✽ لاحظ أن صفة (far) صفة شاذة والدرجة الثالثة منها (farthest).

- Ramy jumped the farthest.





## Exercises on Lesson 1

### 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Hani : What sports events do you like?

Fady : .....

Hani : Are you a fast runner?

Fady : .....

### 2 Choose the correct word(s): Vocabulary

- ① The (athlete – track – event) around the field is very long.
- ② He can (throw – jump – run) the ball very far.
- ③ Lots of (medals – sports – athletes) are competing in the race.
- ④ I can (run – jump – hear) very high.
- ⑤ The (race – winner – track) is exciting. The fastest one will win.
- ⑥ The first winner will get a gold (medal – competition – race).
- ⑦ He (competed – measured – heard) in a jumping competition and won.
- ⑧ The first athlete will (measure – compete – win) a medal.
- ⑨ The (distance – athlete – medal) is very long. He's very tired.
- ⑩ He (throws – measures – jumps) how far he runs in one minute.
- ⑪ How (far – fast – old) can he jump? - He can jump four meters.
- ⑫ How (high – far – fast) can he run? - He can run 100 meters in 15 seconds.
- ⑬ (How – Who – Where) was the fastest? - Sherif was the fastest.
- ⑭ How (fast – old – high) can she jump? - She can jump one meter.

### 3 Choose the correct word(s): Structures

- ① I think the athlete wearing red (win – will win – winning).
- ② I think the event (was – be – will be) amazing tomorrow.
- ③ It (will – won't – is) be easy to win today. It will be difficult.
- ④ I think our school will (gets – getting – get) a medal.



- ⑤ We (will – aren't – won't) be sad after the race. We will be happy.
- ⑥ (Did – Will – Is) he come first in the competition? – Yes, he will.
- ⑦ Will she (run – runs – running) fast in the race?
- ⑧ Will you play football? – No, I (will – won't – am).
- ⑨ The winner (are – will – won't) be happy.
- ⑩ Will you wear a green T-shirt? – Yes, I (won't – do – will).

#### 4 Choose the correct word(s): **Adjectives**

- ① Dina jumped (high – higher – the highest) than Lara.
- ② Rana is (fast – faster – the fastest) girl in the class.
- ③ Who is the (slow – slower – slowest) boy?
- ④ Youssef jumped (farther – farthest – far) than Seleem.
- ⑤ Was Tarek (faster – fast – the fastest) than Amir.
- ⑥ Ramy jumped (the farthest – far – farther) of his three friends.
- ⑦ The tortoise is (slow – slower than – the slowest) the rabbit.
- ⑧ Amira jumped (the highest – high – higher). She came first and won a medal.

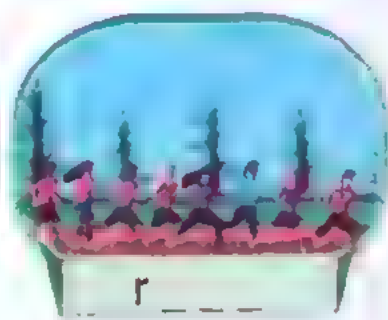
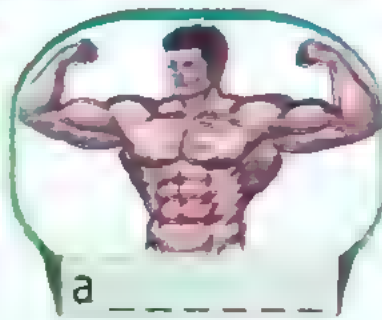
#### 5 Choose the correct word(s):

I'm at a sports event today with Mommy and my brother. Some (**athletes** – **medals**) are running. The (**track** – **athlete**) is 800 meters around the field. The (**race** – **throw**) is exciting – the athletes are running very quickly. I hope Waleed (**wins** – **throws**) today! There is a throwing competition, too. You have to (**throw** – **jump**) the ball as far as you can. Three meters is a good (**race** – **distance**) for throwing the ball. Someone (**measures** – **competes**) how far the athletes throw the ball.

That athlete (**competed** – **measured**) in a sports event and won. He can (**jump** – **distance**) really high! Now, he is getting a (**track** – **medal**)!



## Supply the missing letters:













## Read and complete:

compete – win – measuring – jump – distance – throw

- ① The race track is a ..... of 800 meters.
- ② Youssef can ..... the ball a long way.
- ③ Salma wants to ..... the 100 meter race.
- ④ Miss Mona is ..... how far you jumped.
- ⑤ Ten athletes will ..... in the 200 meter race this afternoon.
- ⑥ Dalia can ..... really high.



**Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:**

- 1 He got a medal. (will)  
 .....
- 2 No, he won't play tennis. (Will)  
 .....
- 3 Will he be happy? (Yes, ....)  
 .....
- 4 She can jump three meters. (How far)  
 .....
- 5 He's wearing a red T-shirt. (tomorrow)  
 .....
- 6 He can run 200 meters in one minute. (How fast)  
 .....
- 7 Yes, she will throw the ball. (Will)  
 .....
- 8 Will you compete in the sports event? (No, ....)  
 .....
- 9 It will be difficult to win today. (easy)  
 .....
- 10 The winner won't be sad. (happy)  
 .....





























**Copy the following sentence:**

 Just do your best and God will do the rest.



## Lesson 2

## Vocabulary

|                |                                                                                     |                       |                     |                                                                                       |              |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| do exercise    |    | يتمرن                 | harder              |    | بجد أكثر     |
| runner         |    | عداء - متسابق         | work hard           |    | بجد بصر      |
| train (v)      |    | يتدرب                 | bring               |    | يحضر         |
| support        |    | بدعم - يساعد          | healthy food        |    | طعام صحي     |
| warm up        |    | يسخن                  | snack               |     | وجبة خفيفة   |
| record (v)     |   | يسجل                  | have a problem      |   | لديه مشكلة   |
| get fit        |  | أحافظ على لياقتي      | worried about       |  | قلق بشأن     |
| friend         |  | صديق                  | parents             |  | الوالدين     |
| come here      |  | نأتي إلى هنا          | 200 meters race     |  | سباق ٢٠٠ م   |
| came second    |  | حصل على المركز الثاني | try                 |  | يحاول        |
| once           |  | مرة واحدة             | get your body ready |  | تجهز جسمك    |
| 3 times a week |  | ثلاث مرات في الأسبوع  | as much as I can    |  | بقدر الامكان |
| on the weekend |  | في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع | finish              |  | ينتهي        |
| have fun       |  | يستمتع                | together            |  | معا - سويا   |



and



و better



أفضل

or



أو How often



كم مرة

because



لأن What



ما - ماذا

so



لذلك Why



لماذا

but



لكن Which



أي

### Vocabulary Study

|                  |                                                                                  |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| exercise         | : activity requiring physical effort, carried out to improve health and fitness. |
| runner           | : a person who runs, especially in a race.                                       |
| train (v)        | : to practise a particular skill.                                                |
| support a friend | : to help your friend.                                                           |
| warm up          | : to get your body ready to do exercise.                                         |
| record (v)       | : to set down in writing for later reference.                                    |
| get fit          | : to have a healthy and sportive body.                                           |
| try harder       | : to work hard to do better.                                                     |
| healthy food     | : the food that's good to your body.                                             |
| snack            | : a small amount of food eaten between meals.                                    |
| worried          | : anxious or troubled about actual or potential problems.                        |
| come second      | : to be the next person to finish after the winner.                              |



## B Structures

(and - or - because - so - but)

and

تربط بين جملتين مثبتتين.

- ♦ I like science **and** maths.

or

تربط بين جملتين منفيتين.

- ♦ I don't like long jump **or** high jump.

because

تربط بين جملتين إحداهما سبب والأخرى نتيجة وتتبع بالسبب.

- ♦ He won the race **because** he ran the fastest.

so

تربط بين جملتين إحداهما سبب والأخرى نتيجة وتتبع بالنتيجة.

- ♦ He ran the fastest **so** he won the race.

but

تربط بين جملتين يعبرا عن التناقض.

- ♦ They played well, **but** they didn't win the match.

## Reading

Hello! My name's Nesma and I'm at the track with my friend, Sara. Sara is an athlete, so she does a lot of exercise. We come here three times a week. She comes with her parents once on the weekend, too.

Sara is a runner, and she has a big competition next month. I think she'll win! I'm training with her to support her, and it helps me get fit. We warm up together and we have fun! I record her race times, too.

Her best event is the 200-meter race. She's very fast! Sara was in a race last month, but she didn't win. She came second, so she wants to try harder. She finished in 35 seconds. She wants to be faster next time. Sara always eats healthy food. We bring some fruit to the track to have a snack, and we drink lots of water.

I like helping Sara because she's a really good friend to me. She always listens when I have a problem, or if I'm worried about something. So that's why I want to help her as much as I can!





# Exercises on Lesson 2

Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue.

Magdy : How fast can you run?

Athlete : .....

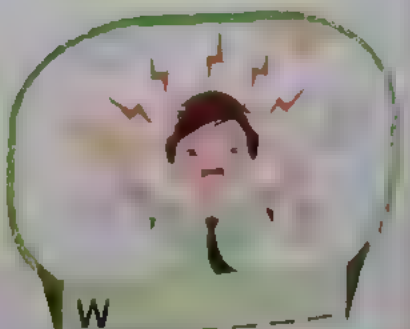
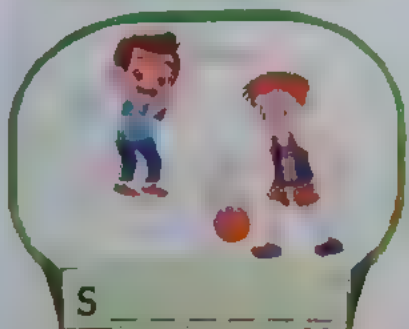
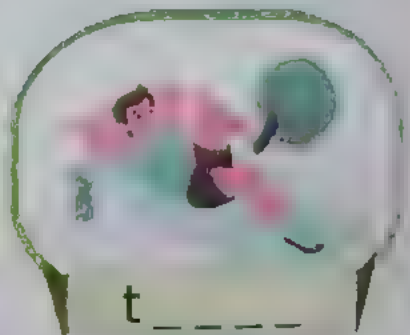
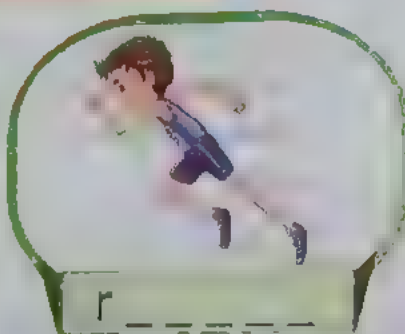
Magdy : Do you enjoy running.

Athlete : .....

Magdy : .....?

Athlete : Yes, I will win the next race.

Supply the missing letters.





## Choose the correct word(s) Vocabulary

- 1 You should (train – sleep – draw) hard to win the next race.
- 2 Players usually (worry – support – warm up) before they start the match.
- 3 Doing (tests – exercise – exams) helps you to get fit.
- 4 You should (support – throw – shout) your friend when he needs help.
- 5 I (bring – work – record) her race times every time we train.
- 6 We should eat (unhealthy – healthy – fast) food.
- 7 I do a lot of exercise to get (up – fat – fit).
- 8 You should support your friend when he has a (problem – meal – shower).

## Choose the correct word(s) Structures

- 1 I like throwing (or – and – but) jumping.
- 2 Sara was in a race last month (but – because – so) she didn't win.
- 3 I can't go to the club today (so – but – because) I have much homework.
- 4 I don't like pizza (and – or – but) pasta.
- 5 He wants to come first (so – because – but) he trains hard.
- 6 How (high – fast – often) does Sara go to the track? - Four times a week.
- 7 I think she (wins – will win – won) the race next month.
- 8 (Which – Why – How) sport do you think is easy? - Running.

## Complete the table using the following words:

and – but – because – so – or

- 1 I like running ..... jumping.
- 2 It's hard to run today ..... it's hot.
- 3 I like running ..... I'm not very fast.
- 4 He has a race next week ..... he trains every day.
- 5 She doesn't like throwing ..... jumping.



## Choose the correct word(s):

Hello! My name's Nesma and I'm at the track with my friend, Sara. Sara is an athlete, so she does a lot of exercise. We come here three times a week. She comes with her parents once on the weekend, too.

Sara is a runner, and she has a big competition next month. I think she'll win! I'm training with her to support her, and it helps me get fit. We warm up together and we have fun! I record her race times, too.

Her best event is the 200-meter race. She's very fast! Sara was in a race last month, but she didn't win. She came second, so she wants to try harder. She finished in 35 seconds. She wants to be faster next time.

Sara always eats healthy food. We bring some fruit to the track to have a snack, and we drink lots of water.

I like helping Sara because she's a really good friend to me. She always listens when I have a problem, or if I'm worried about something. So that's why I want to help her as much as I can!



### Answer the following questions:

- ❶ How often does Sara go to the track?
- ❷ Why does Nesma want to help Sara?



### Choose the correct answer.

- ❶ Sara (**recorded – won – didn't win**) her last race.
- ❷ They bring (**chips – fruit – vegetables**) to the track to have a snack.



Write a paragraph of four sentences on: "My favorite sport"



Think, Write and Share:

- What's the sport? Why do you like it?  
How often do you play it? Who do you play it with?



Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

- 1 I like fish and chicken. (don't like)  
 .....
- 2 He didn't work hard. He came fourth in the race. (because)  
 .....
- 3 Football is my favorite sport. I'm not a good footballer. (but)  
 .....
- 4 I was hungry. I ate all my sandwiches. (so)  
 .....
- 5 He isn't good at throwing or jumping. (is good)  
 .....
- 6 She's training hard so she will win the first medal. (because)  
 .....

Copy the following sentence:

People in glass houses, never throw stones.









## LESSON 3 Pages 8-11

## Vocabulary

|             |                                                                                     |             |                           |                                                                                       |              |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| rules       |    | قواعد       | make fun of<br>- laugh at |    | يسخر من      |
| good friend |    | صديق جيد    | tell secrets              |    | تقول الأسرار |
| Never       |    | لا          | spread rumors             |    | تنتشر إشاعات |
| ideas       |    | أفكار       | pressure someone          |    | تضغط على شخص |
| important   |   | مهم         | listen to                 |   | يستمع إلى    |
| sorry       |  | متأسف - آسف | support                   |  | يدعم - يساند |
| have fun    |  | يستمتع      | apologize                 |  | يعتذر        |

|                      |                                                                                     |              |                     |                                                                                       |                 |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| one day              |  | في يوم ما    | a lot happier       |  | أسعد كثيرًا     |
| come home            |  | يعود للمنزل  | smile               |  | يبتسم           |
| sad                  |  | حزين         | know                |  | يعرف            |
| scared of            |  | خائف من      | What's the matter?  |  | ما الأمر؟       |
| swimming competition |  | مسابقة سباحة | wasn't very kind of |  | لم يكن جيدًا من |

## the "c" sounds: >>>

- c + [e - i - y] → (s) sound  
c + [any other letter] → (k) sound

★ لاحظ أن في الغالب لو أتبع حرف الـ (c) بـ [e - i - y] ينطق (s) ولو أتبع بأي حرف آخر ينطق (k).

race



سباق space



فضاء

distance



مسافة bicycle



دراجة

city



مدينة ice



ثلج

citadel



قلعة ice cream



آيس كريم

### (C) sounds like (k)

carrot



جزرة

cookie



بسكوته

camera



كاميرا

plastic



بلاستيك

cake



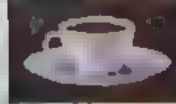
كيك

camel



جمل

coffee



قهوة

cold



بارد

music



موسيقى

### (C) sounds like (s)

sports center



مركز رياضي

mice



فئران

policeman



شرطي

face



وجه

pencil



قلم رصاص

ice



ثلج

rice



أرز

citadel



قلعة

space



فضاء



## My rules for being a good friend!

- ① **Never make fun of your friends!** It isn't kind to laugh at people.
- ② **Never tell your friend's secrets to other people.**
- ③ **Never spread rumors about your friends.**
- ④ **Never pressure your friend to do something he or she doesn't want to do.**
- ⑤ **Listen to your friend's ideas.**
- ⑥ **Support your friend.**
- ⑦ **If you make your friend sad, it's good to apologize.** Saying sorry is important.
- ⑧ **Have fun together!**



## Vocabulary Study

|                                         |                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>rules</b>                            | : one of a set of understood regulations or principles governing conduct within a particular activity. |
| <b>have fun</b>                         | : to enjoy.                                                                                            |
| <b>make fun of</b><br><b>- laugh at</b> | : to make someone angry or challenge him with insulting remarks.                                       |
| <b>secrets</b>                          | : something that is kept or meant to be kept unknown or unseen by others.                              |
| <b>spread</b>                           | : extend over a large or increasing area or among a great number of people.                            |
| <b>rumors</b>                           | : a currently circulating story or report of uncertain or doubtful truth.                              |
| <b>pressure (v)</b>                     | : to attempt to persuade (someone) into doing something.                                               |
| <b>apologize</b>                        | : express regret for something that one has done wrong.                                                |
| <b>citadel</b>                          | : a fortress, typically on high ground, protecting or dominating a city.                               |
| <b>city</b>                             | : a large town.                                                                                        |



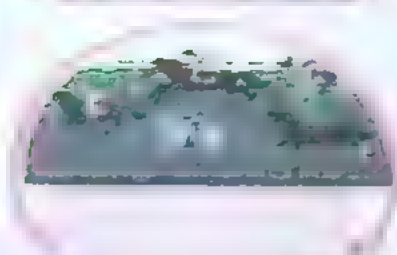
# Exercises on Lesson 3

Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

- Heba : Do you have friends?  
 Marwa : .....  
 Heba : ..... ?  
 Marwa : Hagar is my best friend.  
 Heba : How can you be a good friend?  
 Marwa : .....

Write the correct word under each picture.

apologize – swimming – scared – secrets –  
 competition – smile



Complete the table using the following words.

spread rumors – make fun of – listen – tell secrets –  
 pressure someone – support – have fun – apologize

| Good | Bad |
|------|-----|
| •    | •   |
| •    | •   |
| •    | •   |
| •    | •   |



## Choose the correct word(s) Vocabulary

- ① Never make (sad – happy – fun) of your friends.
- ② Always (support – pressure – listen) your friend.
- ③ Never tell your friend's (name – secrets – medals) to other people.
- ④ Always (have – do – make) fun with your friends.
- ⑤ Never (measure – spread – win) rumors about your friends.
- ⑥ Listen to your friend's (books – homework – ideas).
- ⑦ Never (pressure – measure – try) your friend to do something he or she doesn't want to do.
- ⑧ If you make your friend sad, it's good to (laugh – make fun – apologize). Saying sorry is important.
- ⑨ He's (scared – happy – funny) of water. He can't do the swimming competition.
- ⑩ It wasn't very (sad – bad – kind) of him to tell your secret.

## Read the passage and answer the questions

One day, Tamer was sad when he came home from school.

"What's the matter?" asked his mom.

"Sherif asked me why I didn't want to do the swimming competition. I told him that I'm scared of water, but it was a secret. He told Adam and Wael, and now everyone knows. They are making fun of me."

"That wasn't very kind of Sherif," said Tamer's mom. The next day, Tamer was a lot happier.

"How was school today, Tamer?" his mom asked.

"It was better!" said Tamer, smiling. "Sherif apologized for telling my secret. Adam and Wael said sorry for making fun of me. We're all friends again!"

## A Answer the following questions

- ① Why was Tamer sad?
- ② Why didn't Tamer want to do the swimming competition?

## B Choose the correct answer:

- ③ The next day, Tamer was a lot (**sadder** – scared – happier).
- ④ Sherif (**apologized** – measured – spread) for telling Tamer's secret.

## Sort and complete the table

cake – camel – citadel – city – coffee – cold – face –  
fact – ice – music – pencil – rice

| c sounds like k | c sounds like s |
|-----------------|-----------------|
|                 | (1)             |
|                 | (2)             |
|                 | (3)             |
|                 | (4)             |
|                 | (5)             |
|                 | (6)             |

## Copy the following sentence:

Don't judge a book by its cover.



الإجابات النموذجية  
موجودة على صفحات ألعاب القيس  
@StepAheadSeries



## LESSON 4 Pages 1-3

## Vocabulary

|                |                                                                                     |                 |                       |                                                                                       |                     |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| time           |    | وقت             | distance              |    | مسافة               |
| second         |    | ثانية           | centimeter            |    | سنتيمتر             |
| minute         |    | دقيقة           | meter                 |    | متر                 |
| hour           |    | ساعة            | kilometer             |    | كيلومتر (١٠٠٠ متر)  |
| graph          |    | رسم بياني       | week                  |    | أسبوع               |
| line           |  | خط - سطر        | What happens?         |   | ماذا يحدث؟          |
| world record   |  | رقم قياسي عالمي | Egyptian footballer   |  | لاعب كرة قدم مصري   |
| set a record   |  | يضع رقم قياسي   | play for              |  | يلعب لـ             |
| famous         |  | مشهور           | score                 |  | يحرز - يسجل         |
| the oldest     |  | الأقدم          | highest number        |  | أعلى رقم            |
| the biggest    |  | الأكبر          | one season            |  | موسم واحد           |
| the smallest   |  | الأصغر          | national team         |  | فريق قومي           |
| all the time   |  | طوال الوقت      | Africa Cup of Nations |  | كأس الأمم الأفريقية |
| the most times |  | المرات الأكثر   | something             |  | شيء ما              |



cyclists



راكبوا الدراجات

cycle



يقود دراجة

direction



اتجاه

GPS drawing



رسمه (GPS)

the largest



الأضخم

challenge



تحدي

break the record



يحطم الرقم القياسي

Egyptian people



الشعب المصري

Egyptian Mau



القط المصري

countries



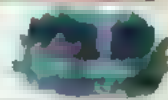
دول

the Great Pyramids



الأهرامات الكبرى

journey



رحلة

shape



شكل

map



خريطة

keep ... healthy



تحافظ عليه صحي

heart



قلب

run up to



يجري حتى

an hour



في الساعة

### Vocabulary Study

|            |                                                                         |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| second     | : sixtieth of a minute of time.                                         |
| minute     | : the period of 60 seconds.                                             |
| hour       | : the period of 60 minutes.                                             |
| centimeter | : a metric unit of length, equal to one hundredth of a meter.           |
| meter      | : the length of 100 centimeters.                                        |
| kilometer  | : the length of 1000 meters.                                            |
| graph      | : a diagram showing the relation between variable quantities.           |
| record (n) | : the best global and most important performance that is ever recorded. |
| famous     | : known about by many people.                                           |
| score      | : the number of points or goals achieved in a game.                     |
| season     | : a length or portion of time.                                          |
| cyclist    | : a person who rides a bicycle.                                         |



**direction** : a course along which someone or something moves.  
**challenge** : a call to take part in a contest or competition.  
**journey** : an act of traveling from one place to another.

## World records

What is a world record? It's something which is the fastest, biggest, oldest, or smallest in the world. People in many different countries like trying to make new world records all the time.

Here are some famous Egyptian world records.

### Did you know ...?

In 2017 / 2018, the Egyptian footballer Mohamed Salah set a world record when he played for the English team, Liverpool. He scored the highest number of goals in one season - 32 goals!

Egypt's national football team has a world record too. It is for winning the Africa Cup of Nations the most times. It won seven times, in 1957, 1959, 1986, 1998, 2006, 2008, and 2010!



And in 2018, cyclists in Egypt made a new world record. They made the largest GPS drawing by bicycle! The challenge was to cycle 761 km around Egypt, and record the direction of the race. The cyclists started at the Great Pyramids of Giza, and it took three days to finish.

The picture of their journey made the shape of a heart on the map! It was important because it made people think about how important it is to keep your heart healthy.

It isn't just Egyptian people who break world records. The Egyptian Mau is the fastest cat in the world. It can run up to 48 kilometers an hour!



# Exercises on Lesson 4

## 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Omar : ..... ?

Adel : I'm reading a book.

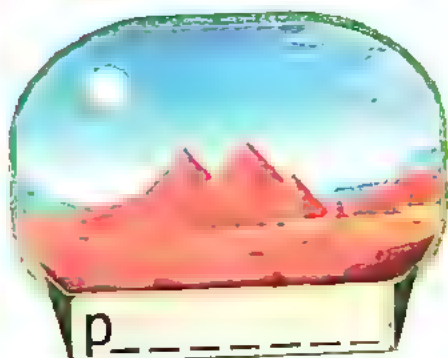
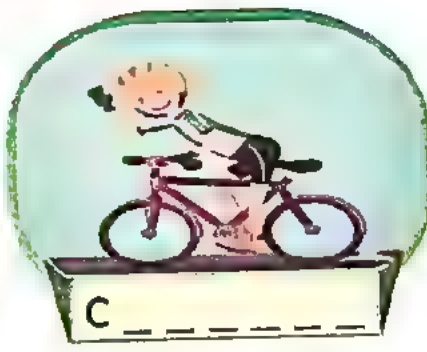
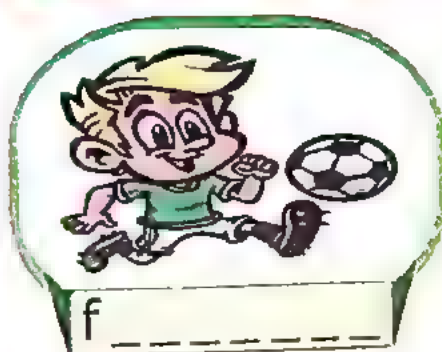
Omar : ..... ?

Adel : It's about famous Egyptian world records.

Omar : Can you tell me one of these records?

Adel : .....

## 2 Supply the missing letters:



## B Choose the correct word(s): Vocabulary

- ① The (second – hour – day) is smaller than the minute.
- ② They made a new world (map – country – record). They made the largest GPS drawing.
- ③ The (centimeter – kilometer – millimeter) is bigger than a meter.



- ④ There are three great (teams – pyramids – journeys) in Giza.
- ⑤ There are 60 seconds in a (minute – hour – day).
- ⑥ He is a fast (footballer – runner – cyclist). He rides his bike very fast.
- ⑦ Messi (played – scored – ran) two goals in the last match.
- ⑧ There are 100 centimeters in a (kilometer – millimeter – meter).
- ⑨ Mohamed Salah is a famous (cyclist – athlete – footballer).
- ⑩ The Egypt's national football team won the Africa (Ball – Cup – Medal) of Nations 7 times.
- ⑪ It was a great (challenge – medal – cup) to cycle 761 km around Egypt.
- ⑫ The Egyptian Mau can run up to 48 kilometers (a – an – the) hour.

### 1 Read the passage and answer the questions:

In 2018, cyclists in Egypt made a new world record. They made the largest GPS drawing by bicycle! The challenge was to cycle 761 km around Egypt, and record the direction of the race. The cyclists started at the Great Pyramids of Giza, and it took three days to finish.

The picture of their journey made the shape of a heart on the map! It was important because it made people think about how important it is to keep your heart healthy.

It isn't just Egyptian people who break world records. The Egyptian Mau is the fastest cat in the world. It can run up to 48 kilometers an hour!

### A Answer the following questions:

- ① What's the new world record they made?
- ② Where did the cyclists start?

## B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 The Egyptian Mau is the fastest (lion – tiger – cat) in the world.  
 4 The picture made the shape of a (star – heart – circle) on the map.

## C Write a paragraph of four sentences on:

**"The Egyptian footballer you like"**

## D Ideas to help you:

- Who's he? Where does he play?  
 Why do you like him? What cups and medals he won.



## E Copy the following sentence:

The more you know, the more you go.



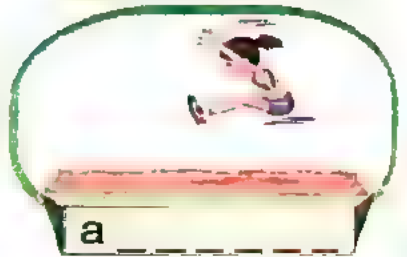
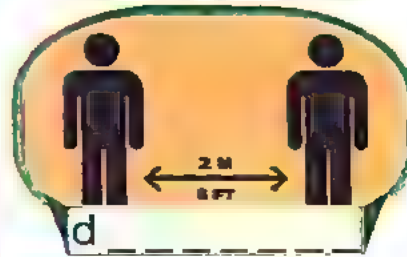
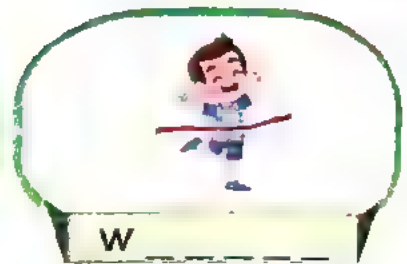
الإجابات النموذجية  
 موجودة على صفحتنا على الفيس  
**@StepAheadSeries**



## Unit Test 1


**1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:** (2Ms)

Hani : .....  
 Fady : Running is my favorite sport.  
 Hani : .....  
 Fady : I go to the track 3 times a week.

**2 Supply the missing letters:** (6Ms)

**3 Choose the correct word in brackets:** (8Ms)

- ① I think he (won – wins – will win) a medal next month.
- ② Was Adam (fast – faster – the fastest) than Tarek?
- ③ It's hard to run today (because – so – but) it's raining.
- ④ You should always (support – pressure – measure) your friend.
- ⑤ Will she (comes – come – came) first in the competition?
- ⑥ Taha jumps the (high – higher – highest) in the class.
- ⑦ I don't like high jump (and – or – but) long jump.
- ⑧ He (will – won't – is) do the swimming competition because he's scared of water.

**4 Rewrite the following sentences doing as shown:** (4Ms)

① No, I won't make fun of my friend. (Will)

↙ .....  
 ↘ .....

② He can run 150 meters in 40 seconds. (How)

↙ .....  
 ↘ .....

3 Mazen can jump far. Ali can jump very far. (than)

4 What will you do tomorrow? (I .....)

Read the following passage and answer the questions below: (4Ms)

What is a world record? It's something which is the fastest, biggest, oldest, or smallest in the world. People in many different countries like trying to make new world records all the time.

Here are some famous Egyptian world records.

In 2017 / 2018, the Egyptian footballer Mohamed Salah set a world record when he played for the English team, Liverpool. He scored the highest number of goals in one season – 32 goals!

Egypt's national football team has a world record too. It is for winning the Africa Cup of Nations the most times. It won seven times, in 1957, 1959, 1986, 1998, 2006, 2008, and 2010!

A Answer the following questions:

1 What's the world record? .....

2 What record did Salah set? .....

B Choose the correct answer:

1 Egypt's team won the Africa Cup (six – seven – eight) times.

2 Salah is a (basketball – handball – football) player.

Write a paragraph of four sentences on: (4Ms)

"How can you get ready for a competition"

Ideas to help you:

☞ Training hard. ☞ Eating healthy food.  
☞ Measure my time. ☞ Support from other people.



Copy the following sentence:

Actions speak louder than words.

(2Ms)




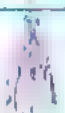










# Body matters



## A Vocabulary

|               |                                                                                   |              |             |                                                                                     |             |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| arteries      |  | شرايين       | brain       |  | المخ        |
| veins         |  | أوردة        | skeleton    |  | هيكل عظمي   |
| blood vessels |  | أوعية دموية  | pump it out |  | يضخه للخارج |
| beat          |  | ينبض (القلب) | oxygen      |  | أكسجين      |
| lungs         |  | الرئتين      | nutrients   |  | مواد مغذية  |

|                  |                                                                                     |             |             |                                                                                       |          |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| living organisms |   | كائنات حية  | control     |   | يتحكم في |
| gas              |  | غاز         | grow        |  | تنمو     |
| liquid           |  | سائل        | away from   |  | بعيدا عن |
| look darker      |  | يبدو أغمق   | without     |  | بدون     |
| travel back      |  | يرجع - يعود | interesting |  | ممتع     |

## Expressions

|                             |                           |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| how the heart works         | كيف يعمل القلب            |
| moves blood around our body | يلقى الدم لكل أجزاء الجسم |
| 70 times a minute           | ٧٠ مرة في الدقيقة         |
| make us strong              | يجعلنا أقوياء             |



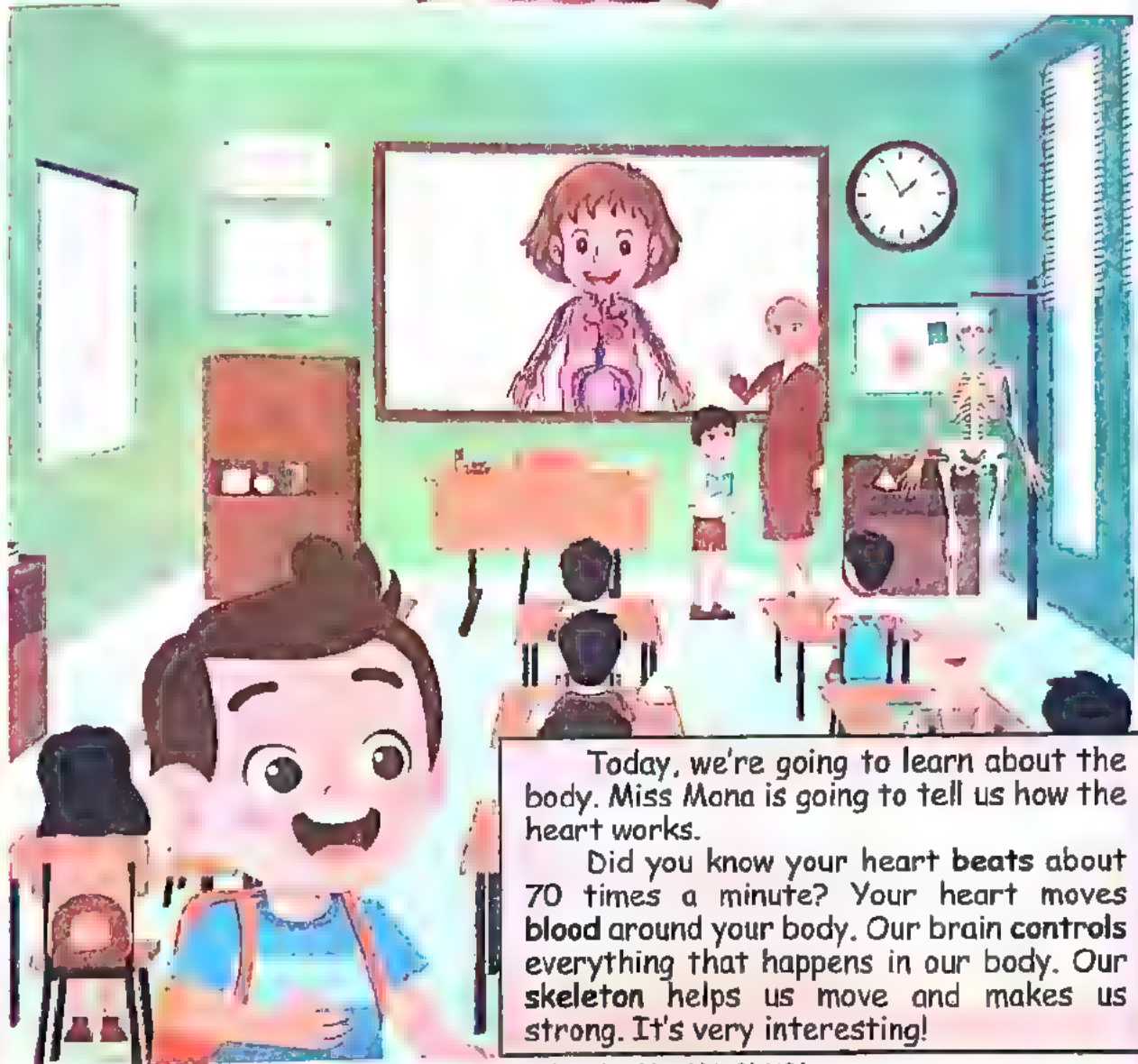
|                                   |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| all parts of the body             | كل أجزاء الجسم                    |
| the rest of the body              | بقية الجسم                        |
| it was used                       | كان يستخدم                        |
| is added to the blood             | يضاف للدم                         |
| That is why                       | لهذا السبب                        |
| pushes the blood to the lungs     | يدفع الدم للرئتين                 |
| oxygenated blood                  | دم محمل بالأكسجين                 |
| There isn't a lot of oxygen left. | لا يوجد الكثير من الأكسجين متبقى. |

~~~~~

Vocabulary Study

arteries	: these carry blood with oxygen in it away from the heart.
veins	: these carry blood without a lot of oxygen in it to the heart.
blood vessels	: veins and arteries.
beat (v)	: to strike repeatedly.
lungs	: the pair of organs situated within the rib cage, consisting of passages into which air is drawn, so that oxygen can pass into the blood and carbon dioxide be removed.
brain	: an organ of soft nervous tissue contained in the skull.
skeleton	: all the bones that keep us strong and help us move.
oxygen	: a gas which all living organisms need.
nutrients	: we need these to help us grow.
living organisms	: all things that live, eat and grow.
gas	: a substance or matter in a state in which it will expand freely to fill the whole of a container, having no fixed shape and no fixed volume.
liquid	: a substance that flows freely but is of constant volume.
blood	: a liquid that carries oxygen and nutrients around your body.

B Structures



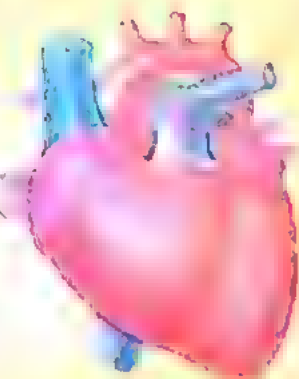
Today, we're going to learn about the body. Miss Mona is going to tell us how the heart works.

Did you know your heart **beats** about 70 times a minute? Your heart moves **blood** around your body. Our **brain** controls everything that happens in our body. Our **skeleton** helps us move and makes us strong. It's very interesting!

The heart is very important because it moves blood around your body. Blood carries **oxygen** and **nutrients** to all parts of the body.

Veins carry blood from the body to the heart. There isn't a lot of oxygen left in this blood because it was used in the body. That is why the blood looks darker.

The heart pushes this blood to the **lungs**. In the lungs, oxygen is added to the blood. The oxygenated blood (now with oxygen in it) travels back to the heart and then the heart pumps it out to the rest of the body in the **arteries**.

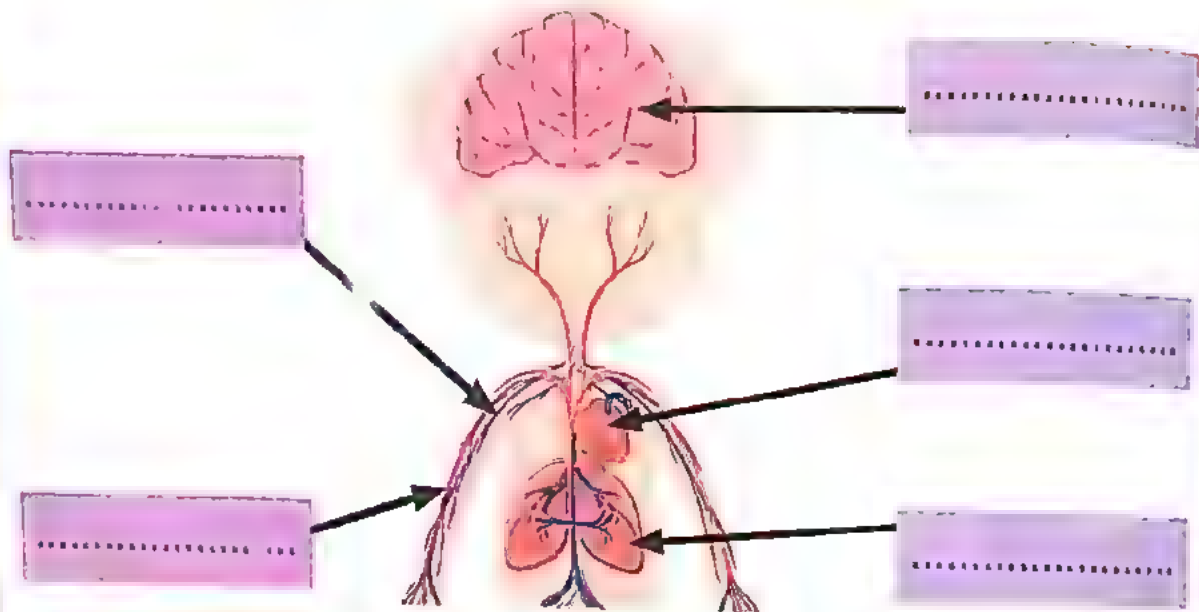




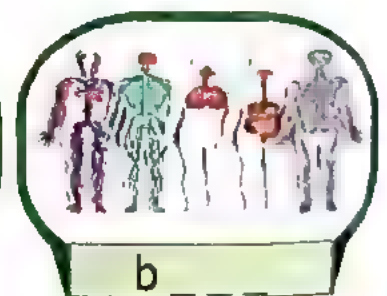
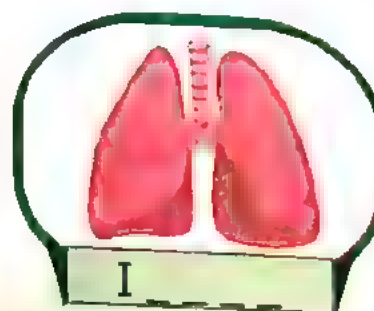
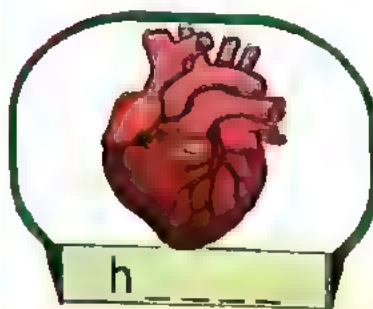
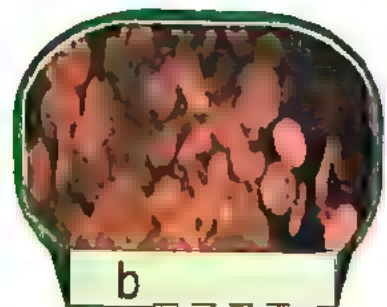
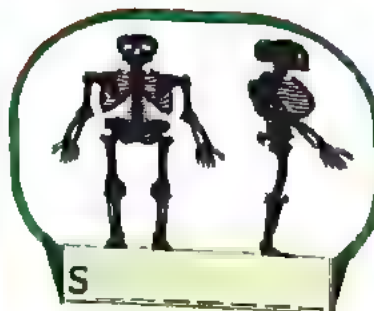
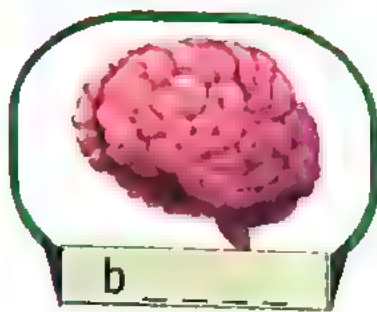
Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Write using the following words:

heart – lungs – veins – arteries – brain



2 Supply the missing letters:





Match 'A' with 'B'.

'A'	'B'
① oxygen	a) These carry blood with oxygen in it away from the heart.
② nutrients	b) A gas which all living organisms need.
③ veins	c) A liquid that carries oxygen and nutrients around your body.
④ arteries	d) Veins and arteries.
⑤ blood	e) We need these to help us grow.
⑥ blood vessels	f) These carry blood without a lot of oxygen in it to the heart.

Read the following passage and answer the questions:

Today, we're going to learn about the body. Miss Mona is going to tell us how the heart works.

Did you know your heart beats about 70 times a minute? Your heart moves blood around your body. Our brain controls everything that happens in our body. Our skeleton helps us move and makes us strong. It's very interesting!



Answer the following questions:

- ① How many times does your heart beat?
- ② How can your heart help your body?



Choose the correct answer:

- ③ Our (**lungs – brain – veins**) controls everything in the body.
- ④ Our (**skeleton – arteries – vessels**) helps us move.

Read the following passage and answer the questions.

The heart is very important because it moves blood around your body. Blood carries oxygen and nutrients to all parts of the body.

Veins carry blood from the body to the heart. There isn't a lot of oxygen left in this blood because it was used in the body. That is why the blood looks darker.

The heart pushes this blood to the lungs. In the lungs, oxygen is added to the blood. The oxygenated blood (now with oxygen in it) travels back to the heart and then the heart pumps it out to the rest of the body in the arteries.

A

Answer the following questions:

- 1 How does blood help your body?
- 2 How does the heart pump blood to the body?


B

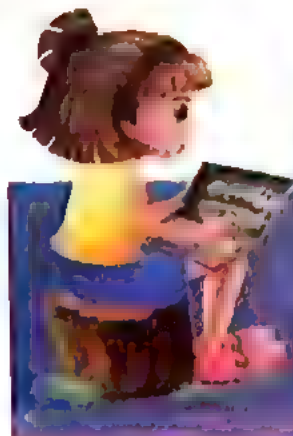
Choose the correct answer:

- 3 (Arteries – Veins – Vessels) carry blood from the body to the heart.
- 4 In the (brain – arteries – lungs), oxygen is added to the blood.

C

Copy the following sentence:

 A good book is a good friend.



الإجابات النموذجية
مقدمة على أساسيات اللغة العربية
@StepAheadSeries

LESSON 2 Pages 13-19

Vocabulary

skeleton



هيكل عظمي

organs



أعضاء الجسم

bones



عظام

knee



ركبة

muscles



عضلات

elbow



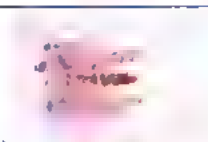
كوع

ribs



ضلوع

jaw



فك

skull



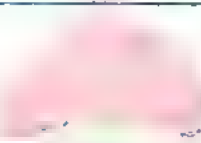
جمجمة

leg



رجل

brain



مخ

arm



ذراع

keep us strong



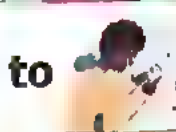
تجعلنا أقوياء

chew food



يمضغ الطعام

attached to



مرتبط بـ

protect



يحمي

lift (v)



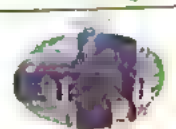
ترفع

hard



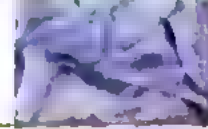
صلب

turn



يلف - يستدير

soft



لين

kick



يركل - يشوط

safe



آمن

dance



يرقص

up and down



أعلى وأسفل

helmet



خوذة

wear



يرتدي

pad



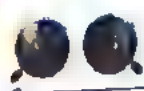
واقى (الركبة أو الكوع)

climb



يتسلق

sunglasses



نظارة شمس

go to bed



ينام

rock



صخر

early



مبكراً

mountain



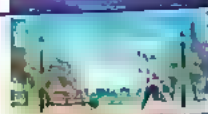
جبل

ride a horse



يركب حصان

park



منتزه

have



يتناول

eyes



عيون

for dinner



للعشاء

Vocabulary Study

bones	: the hard pieces that make up the skeleton.
muscles	: tissues in a human or animal body that has the ability to contract, producing movement in or maintaining the position of parts of the body.
ribs	: the curved bones (twelve pairs in humans) in the chest, protecting the organs like the heart and lungs.
skull	: a framework of bone or the head that enclose the brain.
organs	: parts of the body such as the heart or liver in humans.
knee	: the joint between the thigh and the lower leg in humans.
elbow	: the joint between the forearm and the upper arm.
jaw	: each of the upper and lower bony structures forming the framework of the mouth and containing the teeth.
chew	: bite and work (food) in the mouth with the teeth to make it easier to swallow
protect	: to keep safe from harm or injury.
hard	: solid; not easily broken or bent.
soft	: easy to bend or compress; not hard.
helmet	: a hard protective hat.
pad	: the soft protective lined cloth that protects the knee or elbow.

B Structures

Near Future صيغة المستقبل القريب

Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I } am going to buy.	I } am not going to buy.	Am { I going to buy...?
He } is going to buy	He } isn't going to buy.	Is { he going to buy..?
She } is going to buy	She } isn't going to buy.	Is { she going to buy..?
It } is going to buy	It } isn't going to buy.	Is { it going to buy..?
You } are going to buy	You } aren't going to buy.	Are { you going to buy..?
We } are going to buy	We } aren't going to buy.	Are { we going to buy..?
They } are going to buy	They } aren't going to buy.	Are { they going to buy..?

يتكون من

(am – is – are) + going to + (bare verb) المصدر

* He's going to wear a helmet.

○ We use it to express intentions and plans in the future.

○ نستخدم صيغة المستقبل القريب للتعبير عن نيات وخطط في المستقبل.

* They are going to go to the park today.

○ In the negative form, we add (not) after (am – is – are).

○ عند النفي نضع (not) بعد (am – is – are).

* She isn't going to climb the rock.

○ In the interrogative form, we use (am – is – are) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with (going to + bare verb).

○ عند عمل سؤال على صيغة المستقبل القريب , نبدأ السؤال بـ (am – is – are), أو نضع إحداهم بعد أداة الاستفهام مع (المصدر + going to →).

* What are you going to do after school?

☞ I'm going to do some exercise.

* Is she going to wear her sunglasses?

☞ No, she isn't.

* Are you going to go to bed early?

☞ Yes, I am.

Our skeleton is all the bones that keep us strong and help us move. We need muscles to move our bones. Muscles are attached to bones and they lift and turn bones so we can walk, run, dance - anything! When we kick a ball, muscles make the bones in our leg and knee move.

Muscles in our arms and elbows move when you play tennis. We use muscles when we chew food, to move the jaw bone up and down.

Bones are hard, and they protect our soft organs. Our brain, heart and lungs are important organs that need to be safe.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Nada : Are you going to watch tonight's film?

Rana :

Nada :?

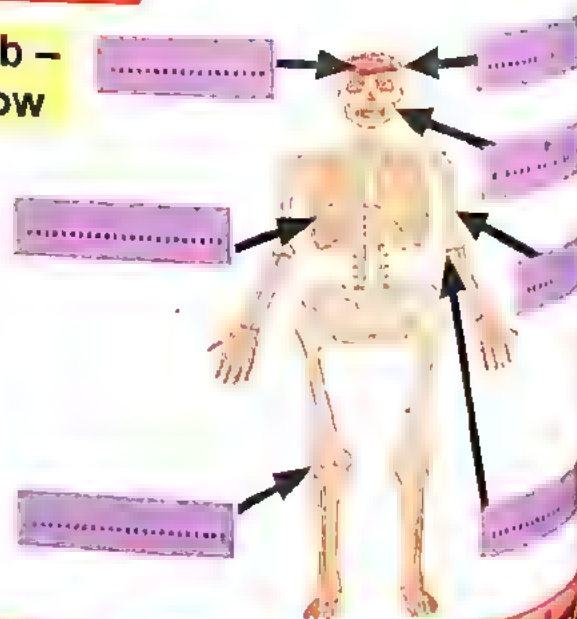
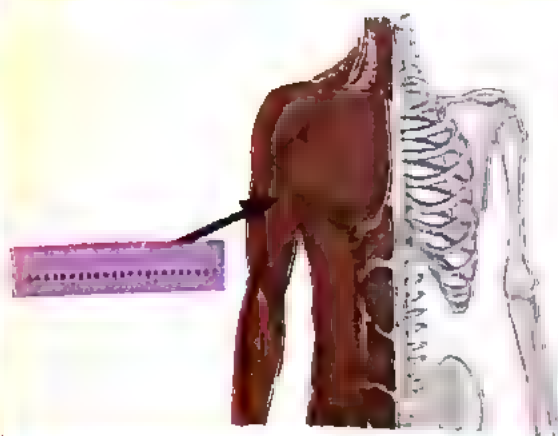
Rana : Because I'm going to go to bed early.

Nada : What are you going to do tomorrow?

Rana :

2 Write using the following words:

skeleton – brain – skull – rib –
knee – muscle – jaw – elbow

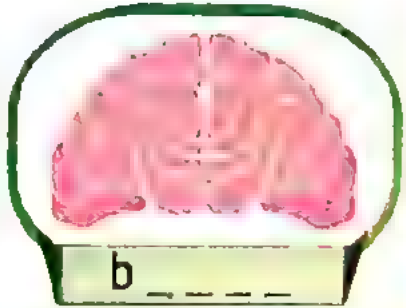
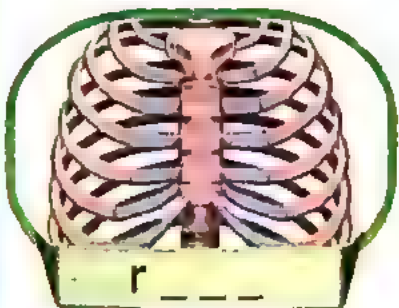
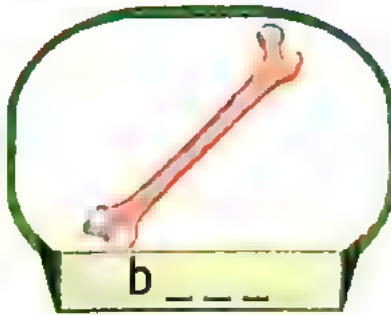
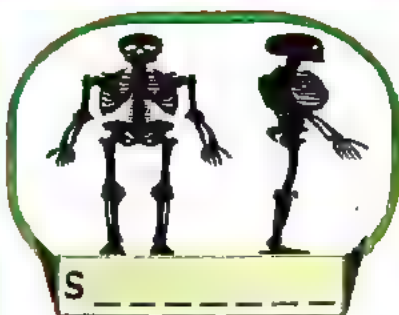




Choose the correct word in brackets:

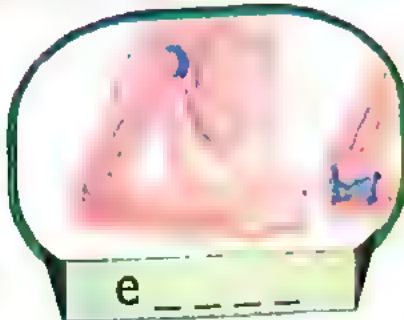
- ① He (am – is – are) going to watch the match.
- ② They (am – is – are) going to help us.
- ③ I (am – is – are) going to have fish for lunch.
- ④ You (am – is – are) going to drop the glass.
- ⑤ She (am – is – are) going to come with us.
- ⑥ We (am – is – are) going to visit our grandparents.
- ⑦ I'm (go – goes – going) to wear a helmet.
- ⑧ She isn't going to (go – goes – going) to the park.
- ⑨ Manar (wears – wore – is going to wear) her blue dress for tomorrow's party.
- ⑩ He (buy – is going to buy – buys) a new bike next week.
- ⑪ (Are – Have – Do) you going to wear your helmet?
- ⑫ Is he going to (climb – climbs – climbing) the mountain? ..
- ⑬ Is she going to play video games? - No, she (doesn't – is – isn't).
- ⑭ Are they going to (has – have – had) chicken for dinner?
- ⑮ We are (go – goes – going) to go to the park after school.
- ⑯ (Is – Has – Does) he going to go to bed early?

Supply the missing letters:

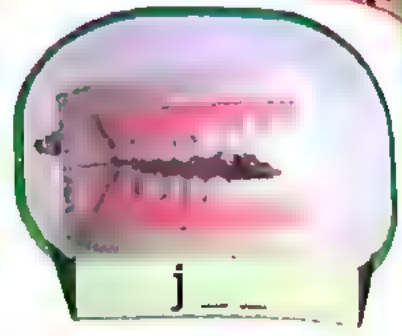




k _ _ _



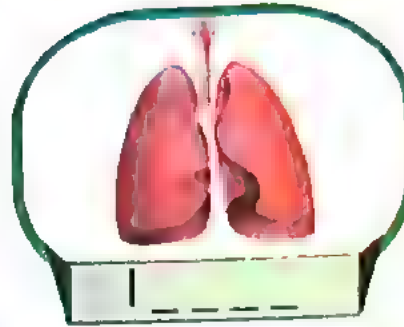
e _ _ _



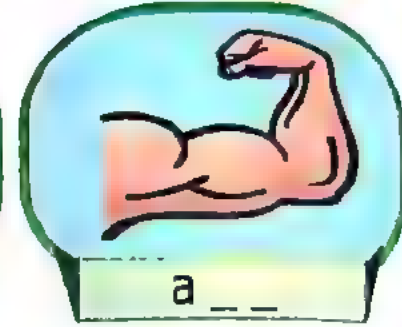
j _ _



h _ _ _



l _ _ _



a _ _

Read the following passage and answer the questions:

Our skeleton is all the bones that keep us strong and help us move. We need muscles to move our bones. Muscles are attached to bones and they lift and turn bones so we can walk, run, dance – anything! When we kick a ball, muscles make the bones in our leg and knee move.

Muscles in our arms and elbows move when you play tennis. We use muscles when we chew food, to move the jaw bone up and down.

Bones are hard, and they protect our soft organs. Our brain, heart and lungs are important organs that need to be safe.



Answer the following questions:

- ① Why is our skeleton important?
- ② Why do we need muscles?



Choose the correct answer:

- ③ Muscles in our arms and (**knees – jaws – elbows**) move when we play tennis.
- ④ Our bones are (**soft – hard – liquid**).



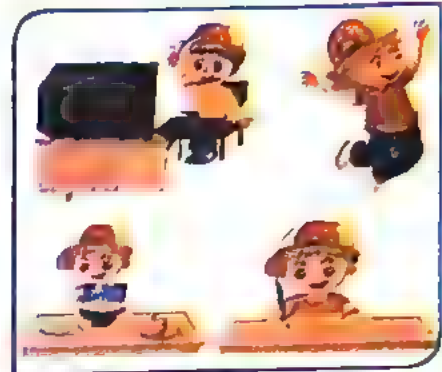


Write a paragraph of four sentences on:

"What are you going to do tomorrow?"

Words to help you:

eat – play – watch – visit – go



Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

- 1 She plays with her friends. (tomorrow)
 ↪
- 2 We ride our bikes on Friday. (going to)
 ↪
- 3 He's going to go to the club. (not)
 ↪
- 4 Yes, she's going to wear her sunglasses. (Is)
 ↪
- 5 What are you going to do tomorrow? (I)
 ↪
- 6 No, I'm not going to watch TV. (Are)
 ↪
- 7 Does he help at home? (going to)
 ↪
- 8 We go to Alexandria every year. (next week)
 ↪
- 9 Are you going to have fish for dinner? (No,)
 ↪
- 10 Is she going to wear pads? (Yes,)
 ↪

Lesson 3









Pages 47-48

Vocabulary

tired		مجهّد - متعب	enough nutrients		تغذية كافية
cross (adj)		غاضب	changes		تغييرات
positive		إيجابي - واثق من نفسه	mostly		في الغالب
relaxed		مسترخ	right ideas		أفكار جيدة
mood		حالة مزاجية	agree		يقبل - يوافق
argument		جدال	face		بواجه

meal		وجبة	forget		ينسى
hungry		جوعان	get		يحصل على
fruit		فاكهة	try		أحاول
vegetables		خضراوات	prefer		يفضل
piece		قطعة	tell		يخبر
sweet - candy		حلوى	cycling		ركوب الدراجات
snack		وجبة خفيفة	always		دائمًا
juice		عصير	usually		عادة



cup		فنجان	sometimes		أحيانًا
soda		مياه غازية	ever		دومًا
lunch		الغداء	never		أبدًا - مطلقًا
dinner		العشاء	Brilliant!		رائع!

Expressions

skip breakfast لا يتناول طعام الإفطار

stay up late يظل متيقظًا حتى وقت متأخر ليلًا

How often كم مرة - كم عدد المرات

How much sleep ما كمية النوم

healthy lifestyle نمط حياة صحي

healthy choices خيارات صحيحة

a glass of water كوب من الماء

Keep trying! داوم على المحاولة. لا تيأس.

Well done! حسنًا فعلت. برفو.

on a school night في ليلة يكون هناك مدرسة صباحًا

on the weekend في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع



B Structures

Enrich your knowledge أضف إلى معلوماتك

like – love – prefer → [v. + ing] or [noun]

كـ الأفعال [like – love – prefer] يتبعوا بـ [ing + فعل] أو اسم.

- ♦ I like (eating) fruit and vegetables.
- ♦ I prefer watching TV.
- ♦ I love playing video games.

feel → adj

كـ فعل (feel) ← يتبع بصفة.

- ♦ I feel tired and cross.
- ♦ I feel hungry.
- ♦ I feel happy and calm.
- ♦ I feel relaxed.

○ How often

* كم مرة - كم عدد المرات

كـ الإجابة على السؤال البادئ بـ (How often) تكون بإحدى طريقتين، إما باستخدام كلمات مثل : (...not very often – never – usually – sometimes – always) أو بذكر عدد المرات.

- ♦ How often do you go to the club?

- ↳ I usually go to the club.
- ↳ I go to the club three times a week.

- ♦ How often do you drink water?

- ↳ Not very often.
- ↳ I drink one glass of water with my lunch and dinner.

(always – usually – sometimes – never)

كـ هذه الكلمات توضع قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد (v. to be) ← (are – is – am).

- ♦ I never eat in the morning.
- ♦ She's never late for school.
- ♦ I always eat five pieces of fruit a day.
- ♦ I'm always in a good mood.
- ♦ I usually sleep for seven hours.
- ♦ I sometimes stay up late on a school night.
- ♦ Sometimes I feel tired.

كـ لاحظ أن (sometimes) يمكن أيضًا أن تأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة.



play → ball games
go → (ing) games
do → other games

➤ تتبع بالرياضات التي تلعب بالكرة
➤ تتبع بالرياضات المنتهية بـ (ing)
➤ تتبع ببقية الرياضات

- I play football in the club.
- I go swimming once a week.
- I do [sport – exercise – judo – karate] with my friends.

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Ayman : Do you ever skip breakfast?

Ehab :

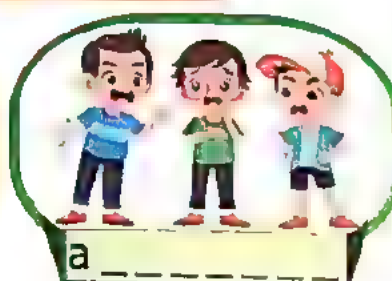
Ayman : What do you usually have for lunch?

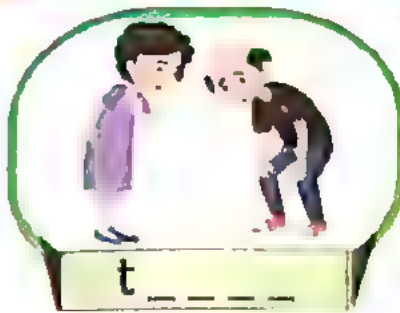
Ehab :

Ayman : ?

Ehab : I always eat five pieces of fruit a day.
Sometimes six or seven.

2 Supply the missing letters:





How healthy are you?

1 Do you ever skip breakfast?

- a) Yes, every day. I never eat in the morning.
- b) Sometimes, but I try not to.
- c) No, I always eat breakfast. It's my favorite meal!

2 How much sleep do you get every night?

- a) I usually sleep for seven hours.
- b) Between seven and nine hours.
- c) I get nine or ten hours every night.

3 Do you play outside every day?

- a) No, I prefer watching TV or playing video games.
- b) I sometimes play outside after school or on the weekend.
- c) Yes, I love being outside.

4 How often do you eat fruit and vegetables?

- a) I have one or two pieces a day.
- b) I try to eat five pieces a day, but I don't every day.
- c) I always eat five pieces a day, sometimes six or seven!

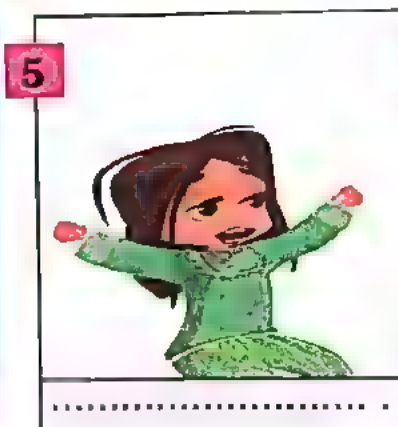
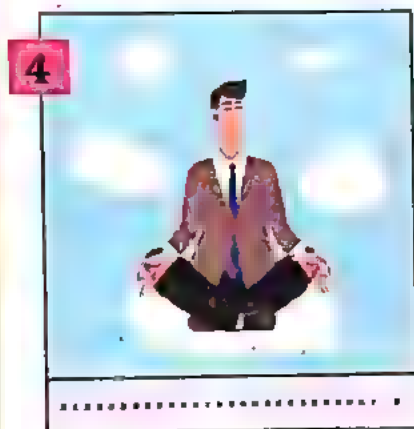
5 How often do you drink water?

- a) Not very often – I prefer juice and soda.
- b) I drink one glass of water with my lunch and dinner.
- c) I have about six cups a day, and more when it's hot.



4 Supply the missing letters:

be calm – be in a good mood – be positive –
have an argument – skip breakfast – stay up late



5 Complete the sentences using the following words:

is calm – is in a good mood – be positive –
have an argument – skip breakfast – stay up late

- ① I don't because the next day I feel tired and angry.
- ② When I feel worried I try to and think of nice things.
- ③ Nora does exercise every morning so that she all day.
- ④ I feel unhappy when I with my friend.
- ⑤ I get hungry and tired if I
- ⑥ Wael doesn't shout or cry when things go wrong. He

Put a (✓) or (x):

Laila: I sometimes stay up late on a school night because I like watching TV and playing video games. In the morning I feel tired and cross!

☐

Adam: When I find things difficult at school, or I have arguments with my friends, I try to stay positive. I like taking a walk outside, because it helps me feel happy and calm.

☐

Dareen: I do exercise every day – I play football or go swimming. I like cycling too. I'm always in a good mood after I do exercise.

☐

Zain: I like fruit, but I eat a lot of sweet snacks too. Sometimes I feel tired, so I have candy and snacks. My mom says I don't get enough nutrients.

☐

Malak: I like school, but I sometimes worry because I have arguments with my friends. Then I feel angry and sad. I don't tell anyone. I play video games and try to forget about it.

☐

Write a paragraph of four sentences on:

"How healthy are you?"

Ideas to help you:

How often do you (exercise – sleep – watch TV – play video games – eat healthy food)?



Copy the following sentence:

 Four eyes see better than two.

Lesson 4 Pages 24-25

A Vocabulary

skin		جلد	top		قمة
dirt		قذارة	middle		منتصف
germs		جراثيم	bottom		قاع
layer		طبقة	weather		طقس
attach ... to ...		يرتبط بـ	cool		بارد
sunburn		سفعة شمس - ضربة شمس	warm		دافئ
wear sunscreen		يضع كريم واقٍ من الشمس	hot		حار
look after		يعتني بـ	sun		شمس
as well as		علاوة على	damage (v)		يتلف
get through		يخترق	the largest		الأضخم

Phonics

the "o" sounds: >>>

long "oo"

mood



حالة مزاجية

food



طعام

short "oo"

book



كتاب

cook



يطهي

moon		قمر	good		جيد
room		حجرة	wood		خشب

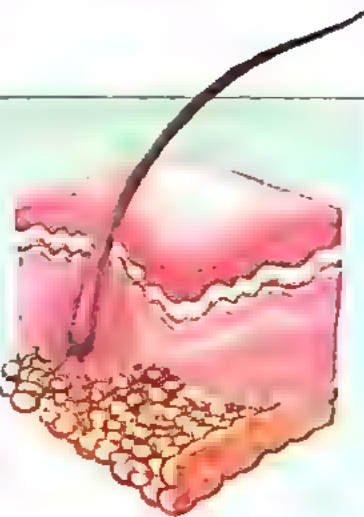
Vocabulary Study

skin	: the thin layer of tissue forming the natural outer covering of the body of a person or animal.
dirt	: to enjoy.
germs	: a substance, such as mud or dust, that stains someone or something.
layer	: a covering, typically one of several, covering a surface or body.
sunburn	: harm of the skin caused by overexposure to the ultraviolet rays of the sun.
sunscreen	: a cream or lotion rubbed on to the skin to protect it from the sun.
damage (v)	: to cause harm to something.
weather	: the state of the atmosphere at a place and time.

Reading

Our skin is the largest organ in our body, and it's very important. It protects us from the sun, as well as from dirt and germs. It keeps you cool in hot weather, and warm in cold weather! We need to look after our skin to keep it healthy. Our skin has got lots of layers - look:

- 1. Top layer** : This is strong. Water can't get through it!
- 2. Middle layer:** We can feel hot and cold things here. This has got blood vessels.
- 3. Bottom layer:** This attaches your skin to your bones and muscles. The sun can damage our skin. We can get sunburn. It's important to wear sunscreen to protect our skin. Do you wear sunscreen?



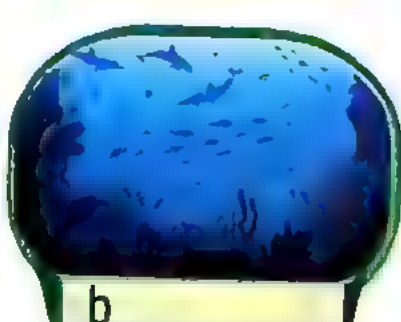
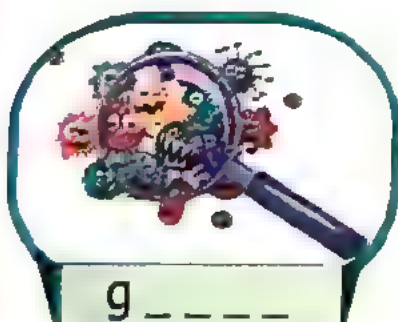
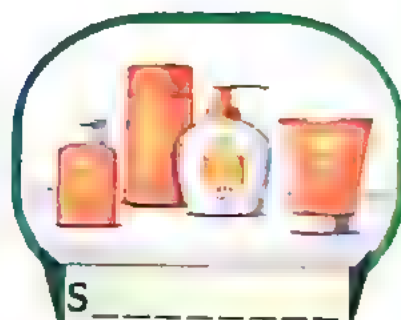
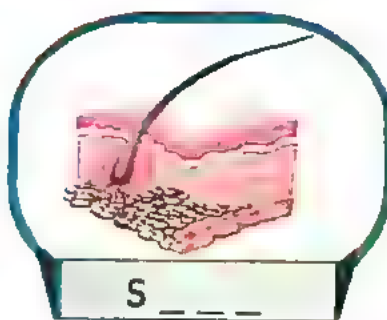


Exercises on Lesson 4

Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

- Dina : Do you know what the largest organ in our body is?
 Ola : Is it our brain?
 Dina :
 Ola : ?
 Dina : No, it isn't our lungs.
 Ola : ?
 Dina : Yes, it's our skin.

Supply the missing letters:



Read the passage and answer the questions:

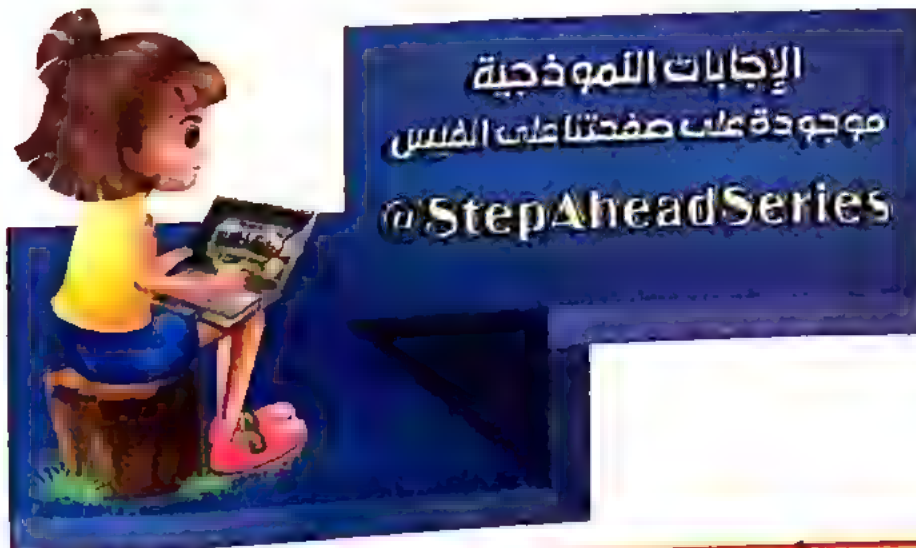
Our skin is the largest organ in our body, and it's very important. It protects us from the sun, as well as from dirt and germs. It keeps you cool in hot weather, and warm in cold weather! We need to look after our skin to keep it healthy. Our skin has got lots of layers – look:

The top layer is strong. Water can't get through it! The middle layer helps us to feel hot and cold things. It has got blood vessels. The bottom layer attaches your skin to your bones and muscles. The sun can damage our skin. We can get sunburn. It's important to wear sunscreen to protect our skin.

- 1 Our skin keeps us in hot weather and in cold weather.
- 2 can't get through our top layer of skin.
- 3 We have got in the middle layer of skin.
- 4 Our bottom layer of skin is attached to our and
- 5 We can get from the sun.

Copy the following sentence:

☞ Don't put all your eggs in one basket.



Lesson 5 Pages 26-27

A Vocabulary

human body		الجسم البشري	mouth		فم
stomach acid		حمض المعدة	teeth		أسنان
swallow		يبتلع	tongue		لسان
chew		يمضغ	jaw		فك
absorb		يمتص	change		يغير
break down		يحلل - يكسر	push it down		تدفعه لأسفل
saliva		اللعاب	get rid of		يتخلص من
digestion		هضم	Have a look.		إلق نظرة.
special liquid		سائل خاص	unhealthy		غير صحي
energy		طاقة	called		يسمى

Vocabulary Study

stomach	: the internal organ in which the major part of the digestion of food happens.
stomach acid	: a chemical substance in the stomach that helps to digest food.
swallow	: cause or allow foods or drinks to pass down the throat.
absorb	: to take in or soak up (energy or a liquid or other substance) by chemical or physical action.

break down	: to change the food inside the stomach into a liquid.
saliva	: the liquid in the mouth chewing and swallowing, and helping digestion.
digestion	: the process of breaking down food into substances that can be used by the body.
energy	: the strength needed for physical or mental activity.
tongue	: the fleshy muscular organ in the mouth, used for tasting, licking, swallowing
get rid of	: to throw away things that are unwanted.
unhealthy	: not healthy, harmful to health.

We know it's important to eat healthy food. But do you know what happens to food after you eat it?

When we swallow food, it goes to our stomach. We get energy and nutrients from the food we eat. But our bodies have to change the food so it can use it. It has to break down the food before it can absorb it. We chew food in our mouths, using our teeth, tongue and jaw. We need saliva to help us do this. This is a liquid made in our mouth. Then we swallow the food. Muscles help to push it down to our stomach. When the food is in our stomach, another special liquid called 'stomach acid' breaks down the food. This is called digestion. Now the body can absorb the nutrients it needs from the food, and get rid of the things it doesn't need.



Exercises on Lesson 5

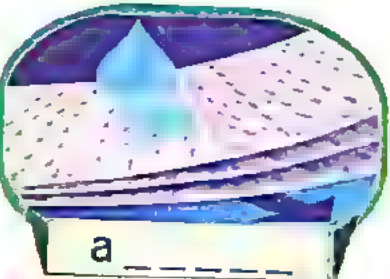
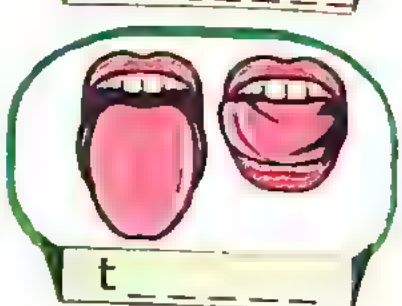
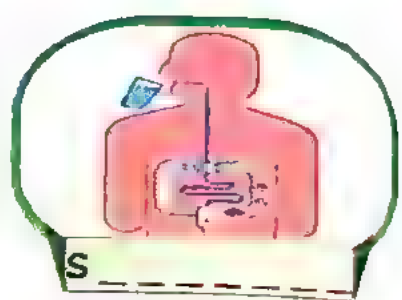
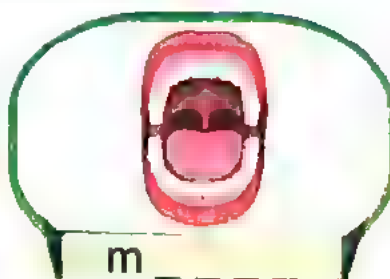
Complete the sentences using the following words:

**stomach – chew – swallow – breaks down –
teeth – tongue – saliva – absorb – mouth**

- 1 First, we put food in our
- 2 We make food smaller with our
- 3 We our food with our teeth, and jaw.
- 4 We have a liquid called in our mouth to help.

- 5 When our food is smaller, we can it.
 6 When we eat, food goes to our
 7 In the stomach, our body the food.
 8 Then we can the nutrients we need.

2 Supply the missing letters.



B Read the following passage and answer the questions:

We know it's important to eat healthy food. But do you know what happens to food after you eat it?

When we swallow food, it goes to our stomach. We get energy and nutrients from the food we eat. But our bodies have to change the food so it can use it. It has to break down the food before it can absorb it. We chew food in our mouths, using our teeth, tongue and jaw. We need saliva to help us do this. This is a liquid made in our mouth. Then we swallow the food. Muscles help to push it down to our stomach. When the food is in our stomach, another special liquid called 'stomach acid' breaks down the food. This is called digestion. Now the body can absorb the nutrients it needs from the food, and get rid of the things it doesn't need.

**A** // "Answer the following questions:

- ① What do we get from the food we eat?
- ② What's saliva?

B // "Choose the correct answer:

- ③ We chew food in our (**stomach – lungs – mouth**).
- ④ Our bodies can (**absorb – break down – get rid of**) the nutrients it needs from the food.

C // "Number in order:

- ☐ a) Muscles help push food from our mouths into our stomach.
- ☐ b) The body absorbs nutrients from our food.
- ☐ c) Saliva helps break down the food in our mouths.
- ☐ d) Stomach acid breaks down the food in our stomach.
- ☐ e) We swallow the food.
- ☐ f) We chew food in our mouths.

D // "Copy the following sentence:

 Better late than never come.

Unit Test 2



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue. (2Ms)

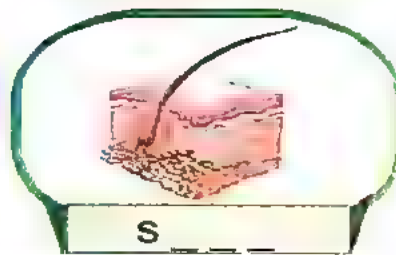
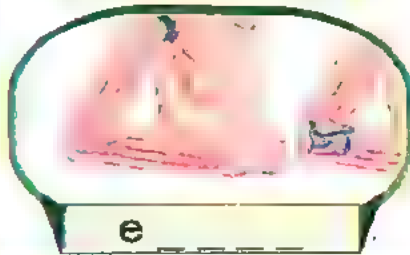
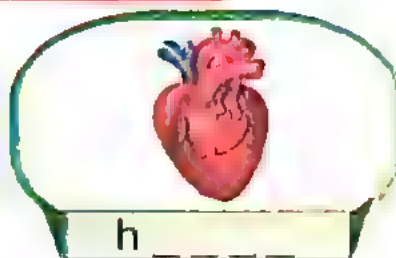
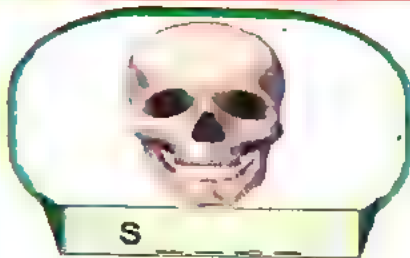
Amar :

Fady : I usually sleep for six hours every night.

Amar : Do you ever stay up late?

Fady :

2 Supply the missing letters. (6Ms)



3 Choose the correct word in brackets. (8Ms)

- ① He's (**go** – **going** – **goes**) to climb the rock.
- ② I (**never** – **usually** – **always**) eat in the morning. I love breakfast.
- ③ (**Is** – **Has** – **Does**) she going to drink juice or soda?
- ④ Muscles are attached (**at** – **to** – **for**) bones.
- ⑤ They are going to (**go** – **goes** – **going**) swimming.
- ⑥ We need (**veins** – **arteries** – **nutrients**) to help us grow.
- ⑦ Are they going to (**wear** – **wears** – **wearing**) their pads?
- ⑧ Your heart moves (**vessels** – **blood** – **stomach**) around your body.

4 Rewrite the following sentences doing as shown. (4Ms)

- ① Yes, he's going to ride a horse.

(Is)

↳

- ② What are you going to do next Friday?

(I)

↳

3 Are they going to drink soda?

(No,)

4 We're going to do exercise after school.

(not)

Read the following passage and answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Tomorrow is a holiday. I'm going to watch TV. My brother Hady is going to read some books. My sister Mai is going to play with her friends. My friend Sameh is going to go to the cinema. My friends Ahmed and Gamal are going to ride their bikes.

A // Answer the following questions:

1 What's Hady going to do tomorrow?

2 Where's Sameh going to go tomorrow?

B // Choose the correct answer:

3 Hady has (no sisters – one sister – two sisters).

4 Tomorrow is a (Monday – Wednesday – holiday).

Write a paragraph of four sentences on: (4Ms)

"The organs in your body and why they are important"

I // Ideas to help you:

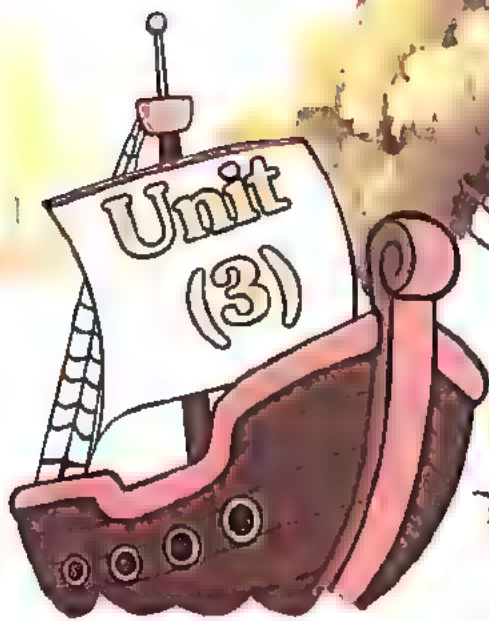
heart – move blood – skeleton – strong – stomach –
digestion – skin – protect – bones – move



Copy the following sentence:

(2Ms)

A liar isn't believed when he tells the truth.



A Vocabulary

carbohydrates	 كربوهيدرات	dairy	 منتجات ألبان
protein	 بروتين	calcium	كالسيوم
vitamins	 فيتامينات	nutrients	مواد مغذية
fats	 دهون	balance	توازن
minerals	 معادن	energy	طاقة
sugar	 سكريات - سكر	delicious	لذيذ
fiber	 ألياف	healthy diet	نظام غذائي صحي

make you strong

تجعلك قوي

right kinds

أنواع صحيحة

important

هام - مهم

different

مختلف

work well

يعمل بجد

parts of the body

أجزاء الجسم

muscles

عضلات

heart

قلب

skin

جلد

bones

عظام



Unit (3)

a day		في اليوم	try		نحاول
pieces		أجزاء	get		يحصل على
plate		طبق	need		يحتاج
section		جزء	know		يعرف
breakfast		إفطار	find out		يكتشف
good way		طريقة جيدة	grow		يكبر - ينمو
good for		جيد لـ	remember		يتذكر
because		لأن	drink		يشرب
contain		يحتوي على	eat		يأكل

foods		أطعمة	bread		خبز
vegetables		خضراوات	pasta		مكرونة
fruit		فاكهة	rice		ارز
apple		تفاحة	cereal		طعام من الحبوب
banana		موزة	eggs		بيض

fish		سمك	spread		معجون للأكل (كالزبدة)
meat		لحمة	milk		لبن
oils		زيوت	cheese		جبين
olive oil		زيت زيتون	cake		كيك
soda		مشروب غازي	biscuit		بسكويت

Vocabulary Study

carbohydrates	: a nutrient that gives us energy. We can get it in bread, pasta, rice, and cereal.
protein	: a nutrient that helps us grow and to make our bodies strong. It's in meat, fish and eggs.
fats	: a nutrient that helps us absorb some important vitamins. It's in some oils and spreads such as olive oil and butter.
vitamins	: a nutrient that we can get in fruit and vegetables.
minerals	: a nutrient such as calcium and zinc.
sugar	: a nutrient that we can get in sweet foods and drinks.
fiber	: a nutrient from which a vegetable or fruit tissue, mineral substance
dairy	: foods and drinks that come from milk like cheese, ...
calcium	: One of the minerals that our bodies need.
nutrients	: substance that provides food important for growth and keeping someone alive.
balance	: a condition in which different elements are equal or in the correct proportions.
energy	: the strength and power needed for physical or mental activity.
delicious	: tastes good.
healthy	: good and right to eat.
section	: One part from many parts.

I always have fruit at breakfast - an apple or a banana. There are lots of **vitamins** in fruit, and there is **fiber**, too! Do you like fruit, Hany?

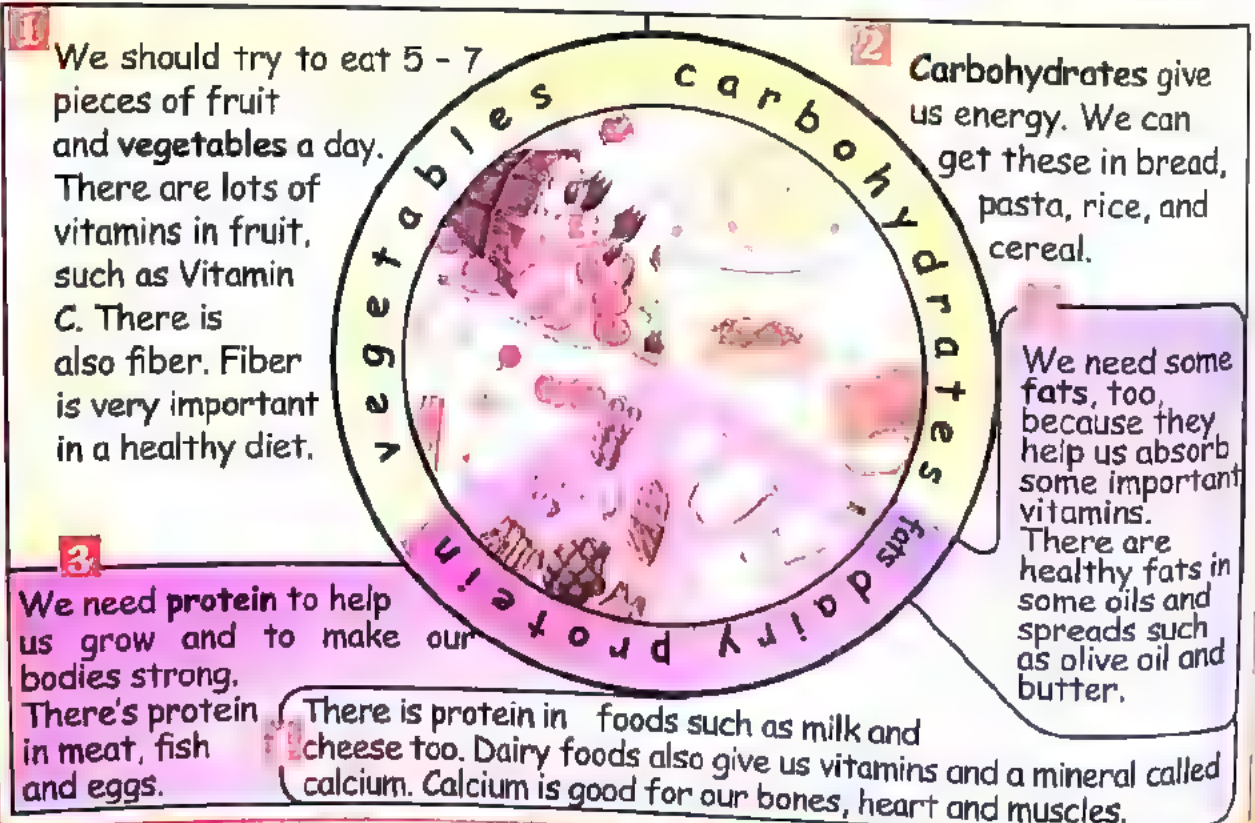
Yes, I do, but what are **vitamins**? Why do we need them?

Vitamins are **nutrients** in some foods. They're good for all parts of your body, and they make you strong! Mom says we should eat lots of fruit to get the vitamins we need.

That's good, because fruit is **delicious**! Are there vitamins in eggs?

Yes, they are!

It's important to get a balance of the right kinds of food. Our bodies need lots of different nutrients, including vitamins and minerals, to work well and be healthy. This healthy eating plate is a good way to think about what we need.



Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Samy : ?

Hosam : Yes, I eat healthy food.

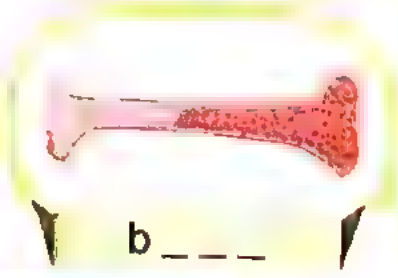
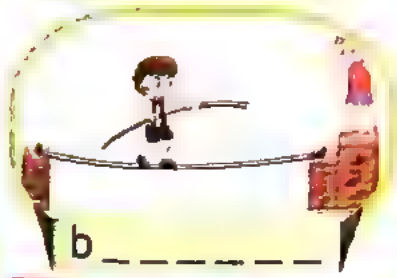
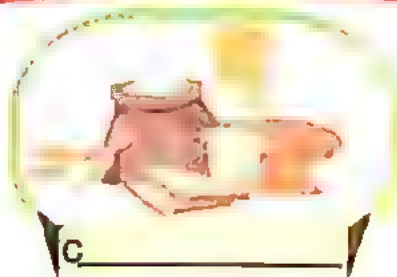
Samy : Can you remember a food in the dairy section?

Hosam :

Samy : Can you remember a food in the carbohydrate section?

Hosam :

2 Supply the missing letters.



3 Read the following passage and answer the questions.

It's important to get a balance of the right kinds of food. Our bodies need lots of different nutrients, including vitamins and minerals, to work well and be healthy. We should try to eat 5 – 7 pieces of fruit and vegetables a day. There are lots of vitamins in fruit, such as Vitamin C. There is also fiber. Fiber is very important in a healthy diet. Carbohydrates give us energy. We can get these in bread, pasta, rice,

and cereal. We need protein to help us grow and to make our bodies strong. There's protein in meat, fish and eggs. There is protein in dairy foods such as milk and cheese too. Dairy foods also give us vitamins and a mineral called calcium. Calcium is good for our bones, heart and muscles. We need some fats, too, because they help us absorb some important vitamins. There are healthy fats in some oils and spreads such as olive oil and butter.

A Choose the correct answer:

- 1 There are lots of (carbohydrates – fats – vitamins) in fruit.
- 2 There's (protein – fiber – calcium) in meat and fish.
- 3 Milk and cheese are (daily – diary – dairy) foods.
- 4 There are (vitamins – fats – carbohydrates) in olive oil and butter.
- 5 (Fiber – Calcium – Cereal) is good for our bones.
- 6 We can get (carbohydrates – protein – vitamins) in bread, pasta and rice.
- 7 There's (fat – protein – fiber) in fruit.
- 8 Calcium is a (vitamin – mineral – protein).
- 9 We need (protein – fiber – vitamins) to help us grow.
- 10 (Vitamins – Carbohydrates – Fiber) give us energy.
- 11 (Protein – Fats – Sugar) help us absorb some important vitamins.
- 12 Cakes, biscuits and soda contain (sugar – protein – fiber).

1 Write a paragraph of four sentences on:

"The foods and drinks you have every day"

Words to help you:

breakfast – lunch – dinner

1 Copy the following sentence:

 The sooner the better.



Lesson 2 Pages 32-33

A Vocabulary

living things		الكائنات الحية	hydrated		رطب (به ماء كافٍ)
humans		بنو آدم	dehydrated		جاف
animals		حيوانات	joints		مفاصل
plants		نباتات	sweat		عرق - يعرق
pure water		ماء نقي	temperature		درجة الحرارة
soil		تربة	toxins		سموم
roots		جذور	health		صحة

organs		أعضاء الجسم	do exercise		يتمرن
blood vessels		أوعية دموية	do a race		يشارك في سباق
oxygen		أكسجين	athlete		لاعب ألعاب قوى
stomach		معدة	hot country		دولة حارة

brain		مخ	hot weather		طقس حار
live		يعيش	cold		بارد
carry		يحمل	liquid		سائل
work better		يعمل بشكل أفضل	drinks		مشروبات
think		يفكر - يعتقد	juices		عصائر
lose		يفقد - يخسر	tea		شاي
move		يحرك - يتحرك	cookies		بسكويت
want		يريد - يرغب	but		لكن
difficult		صعب	every day		كل يوم
ill		مريض	tomorrow		غدا
headache		صداع	What happens?		ماذا يحدث؟
feel tired		يشعر بالتعب	How much		ما كمية

Prepositions

good for us



جيد لنا

made up



يتكون من

break down into



يتحلل إلى

get rid of



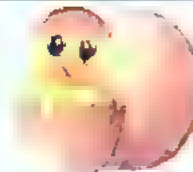
يتخلص من

help with



يساعد في

come out of



يخرج من

around the body



في كل أجزاء الجسم

get it from



تحصل عليها من

Vocabulary Study

living things : anything that live, eat and grow.

humans : a man, woman, or child.

pure : not mixed or adulterated with any other substance or material.

soil : the upper layer of earth in which plants grow.

roots : the part of a plant which attaches it to the ground.

hydrated : when your body gets enough water.

dehydrated : when your body doesn't get enough water.

joints : the parts of your body that move.

sweat : a liquid that comes out of your skin when you are hot.

temperature : how hot or cold you feel.

toxins : things you don't want in your body; they can make you ill.

health : the state of being free from illness or injury.

Why do we need water?



All living things need water. Animals and humans drink water. Plants get it from the soil in their roots. We all know water is good for us, but do you know how important it is for our health? Our blood is about 82% water. Blood carries oxygen and nutrients around the body. We eat food, and it breaks down into nutrients in our stomach. Water helps with this, and it also helps carry the nutrients around the body in our blood vessels.

Our brains are made up of about 75% water.



If you drink enough water, your brain works better. If you don't drink enough water, you get dehydrated. You feel tired and you don't have a lot of energy. You can get a headache or find it difficult to think. When you are hydrated, it means you are getting enough water. It's good for your joints, your bones and your body temperature.



Water also helps your body to get rid of toxins from your body, and helps the other organs in your body to work well. Children should drink about 1.5 litres of water every day. Most of this should be pure water, but we can also get water from other drinks such as milk, tea and fruit juices, and fruits and vegetables. We should drink more water in hot weather, because we lose water when we sweat.

B Structures

لا يجب + shouldn't - يجب + should

- ◆ We can give advice by using (should - shouldn't).
- ◆ يمكن إهداء النصح باستخدام (should - shouldn't) ويتبعها بالمصدر.
- ◆ You should drink enough water every day.
- ◆ You shouldn't eat cookies every day.
- ◆ Should I drink milk every day? ✎ Yes, you should.
- ◆ Should he eat lots of candies and cakes? ✎ No, he shouldn't.



Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Match 'A' with 'B'

'A'

'B'

① hydrated

② dehydrated

③ joints

④ toxins

⑤ temperature

⑥ sweat

a) a liquid that comes out of your skin when you are hot.

b) when your body gets enough water.

c) the parts of your body that move.

d) how hot or cold you feel.

e) things you don't want in your body; they can make you ill.

f) when your body doesn't get enough water.

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Noha :

Dina : No, I don't eat enough fruit or vegetables.

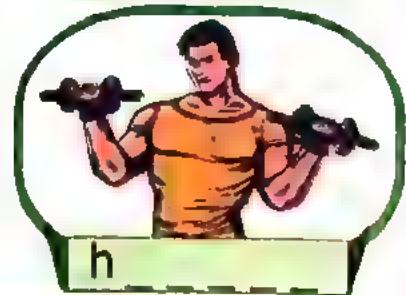
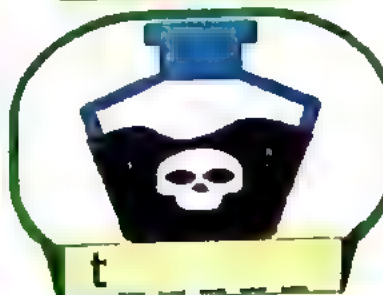
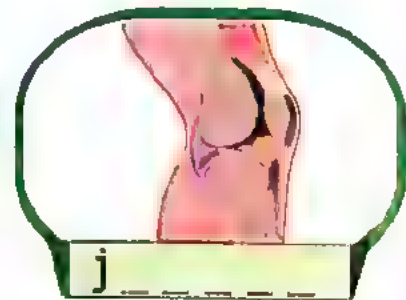
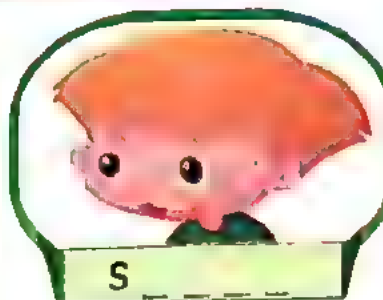
Noha :

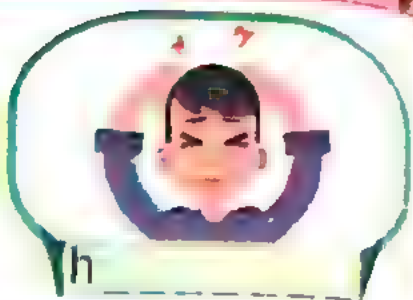
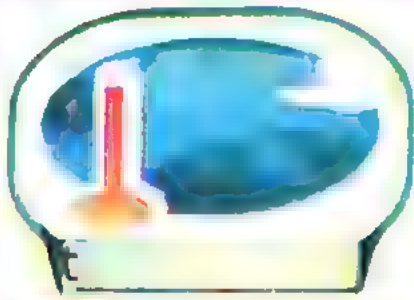
Dina : Yes, I know I should.

Noha : You should also drink enough water, milk and fruit juices.

Dina :

3 Supply the missing letters:





Choose the correct word(s): Structures

- ① You (should – shouldn't) eat healthy food.
- ② You (should – shouldn't) eat cookies every day.
- ③ Should he (go – goes – going) to bed early?
- ④ She shouldn't (eat – eats – eating) or drink a lot of sugar.
- ⑤ You should (eat – drink) enough water.
- ⑥ (Is – Should – Has) he sleep eight hours?
- ⑦ You shouldn't (drinks – drinking – drink) too much soda.
- ⑧ Should I drink water? - Yes, (I should – you shouldn't – you should).
- ⑨ We (should – shouldn't) have a healthy diet.
- ⑩ Should I eat candies every day? - No, (I shouldn't – you shouldn't – you should).

Read the following passage and answer the questions:

All living things need water. Animals and humans drink water. Plants get it from the soil in their roots.

We all know water is good for us, but do you know how important it is for our health? Our blood is about 82% water. Blood carries oxygen and nutrients around the body. We eat food, and it breaks down into nutrients in our stomach. Water helps with this, and it also helps carry the nutrients around the body in our blood vessels.

Our brains are made up of about 75% water. If you drink enough water, your brain works better. If you don't drink enough water, you get dehydrated. You feel tired and you don't have a lot of energy. You can get a headache or find it difficult to think. When you are hydrated, it means you are getting enough water. It's good for your joints, your bones and your body temperature. Water also helps your body to get rid of toxins from your body, and helps the other organs in your body to work well.

Children should drink about 1.5 litres of water every day. Most of this should be pure water, but we can also get water from other drinks such as milk, tea and fruit juices, and fruits and vegetables. We should drink more water in hot weather, because we lose water when we sweat.

A

Answer the following questions:

- 1 How much of our blood is made up of water?
- 2 What happens if you are dehydrated?

B

Choose the correct answer:

- 3 We lose water when we (**sleep** – **sweat** – **sweet**).
- 4 Water helps your body to get rid of (**nutrients** – **protein** – **toxins**).
- 5 You can (**smoke** – **preserve** – **skip**) food with salt.
- 6 In the past, people put food in (**zeer pots** – **cans** – **tins**) to keep it cold.

Read and complete:

should – shouldn't

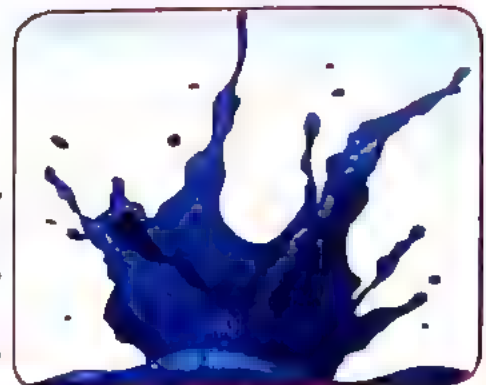
- 1 You eat fruit and vegetables every day.
- 2 You skip breakfast.
- 3 I eat carbohydrates? – Yes, you
- 4 You drink a lot of sodas.
- 5 I eat a lot of candy? – No, you
- 6 You drink enough water every day.

Write a paragraph of four sentences on:





"Why living things need water"






Words to help you:

humans – animals – plants



Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

- 1 Doing exercise is good for your body. (should)

- 2 Drinking soda isn't good for your body. (shouldn't)

- 3 You should never be dehydrated. (should always)

- 4 Yes, I should drink enough water. (Should)

- 5 Should you eat lots of cakes? (No,)

- 6 Making your body strong is very important. (should)

- 7 Sleeping for only five hours is unhealthy. (shouldn't)

- 8 Should I eat a healthy diet? (Yes,)

- 9 No, I shouldn't drink lots of sweet drinks. (Should)

- 10 You should have a healthy body. (unhealthy)


Copy the following sentence:

 If the beginning is good, the end is perfect.

.....

.....

Lesson 3 Pages 84-85



Vocabulary

food packaging		تعليب الطعام	sodium		صوديوم
calories		سعات حرارية	salt		ملح
enough		كاف	bar		قالب
percent	%	نسبة مئوية (%)	snack		وجبة خفيفة
too much		كثير أزيد من اللازم	dried fruit		فاكهة مجففة
gram		جرام	natural		طبيعي
size		حجم - مقاس	chocolate brownie		كيك الشيكولاته

unhealthy		غير صحي	taste sweet		طعمه حلو
right amount		الكمية الصحيحة	candies		حلوى
different choice		اختيار مختلف	favorite		مفضل
decide		يقرر	the most fat		الدهون الأكثر
measure		يقيس	give us		تعطينا
something		شيء ما	How many		كم عدد
each day		كل يوم	So do I.		وكذلك أنا.



Prepositions

at one time	at one time في المرة الواحدة	for example	EXAMPLE على سبيل المثال
mixed with	 ممزوج بـ	better for you	 الفضل لك

Vocabulary Study

food packaging	: wrapping or protecting food onto packets, tins or cans.
calories	: the amount of energy in food.
salt	: sodium mixed with other things that our bodies need.
bar	: a long, narrow piece of solid kind of food or any other material.
snack	: a small amount of food eaten between meals.
dried fruit	: taking out the water from fruit and keeping the nutrients.
natural	: existing in or caused by nature.
brownie	: a small square of rich chocolate cake.
percent	: a rate, number, or amount in each hundred.

We can look at food packaging to find out what is in our food that helps us decide if it is healthy or unhealthy. For example, if we see that there are lots of calories and not a lot of vitamins, we can decide to make a different choice.



serving how much you eat at one time
calories the amount of energy in food
sodium this is a mineral; we need enough of it, but we shouldn't have too much. The salt we get in food is sodium mixed with other things. We shouldn't eat food with too much salt in.
enough the right amount
too much more than we need
percent When we see something like 50%; it means that this food gives us 50%, or half, of the amount of that vitamin or mineral that our bodies need every day.

Serving size	30 grams
Energy	115 calories
Fat	0.4 grams
Carbohydrate	26 grams
Sugar	2.4 grams
Sodium	0.3 grams
Fiber	0.6 grams
Protein	2.1 grams
Vitamin C	50% (percent)
Vitamin D	50% (percent)



Exercises on Lesson 3

Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

- Ahmed : Which snack is your favorite?
 Ramy :
 Ahmed : You shouldn't eat lots of candies.
 Ramy : ?
 Ahmed : Because it contains lots of sugar.
 Ramy : ?
 Ahmed : Yes, sugar is unhealthy.

Match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
① serving	a) more than we need.
② calories	b) a mineral we need.
③ sodium	c) the right amount.
④ enough	d) the amount of energy in food.
⑤ too much	e) how much you should eat at one time.

Read and answer the questions:



Energy 128 calories
 Fat 3 grams
 Sugar 8 grams
 Salt 0.2 grams
cake



Energy 143 calories
 Fat 6 grams
 Sugar 11 grams
 Salt 0.1 grams
cereal bar



Energy 310 calories
 Fat 21 grams
 Sugar 23 grams
 Salt 0.2 grams
chocolate brownie



Energy 68 calories
 Fat 1.2 grams
 Sugar 7 grams
 Salt 0.1 grams
dried fruit bar

- ① Which snack has the most calories?
- ② Which snack has the most fat?
- ③ Which snack has the most sugar?
- ⑤ Which snack has the most salt?
- ⑤ Do you think any of these snacks have too much sugar?
- ⑥ Do you think these snacks have too much fat?

Read the following passage and answer the questions:

We can look at food packaging to find out what is in our food that helps us decide if it is healthy or unhealthy. For example, if we see that there are lots of calories and not a lot of vitamins, we can decide to make a different choice.

Serving is how much you eat at one time. Calories are the amount of energy in food.

Sodium is a mineral; we need enough of it, but we shouldn't have too much. The salt we get in food is sodium mixed with other things. We shouldn't eat food with too much salt in. When we see something like 50%; it means that this food gives us 50%, or half, of the amount of that vitamin or mineral that our bodies need every day.

A // Answer the following questions:

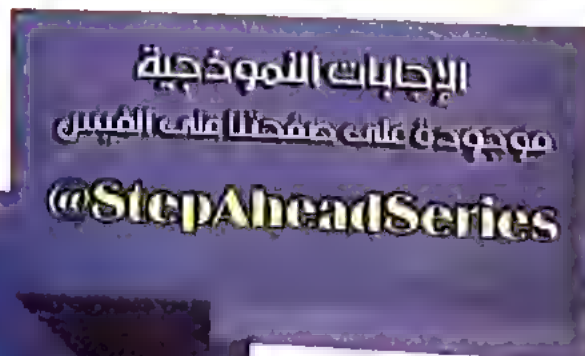
- 1 Why should we look at food packaging?
- 2 What's sodium?

B // Choose the correct answer:

- 3 We measure energy in (**grams – percent – calories**).
- 4 50 % means a (**quarter – half – third**).

Copy the following sentence:

 Don't go near the water until you learn how to swim.



electricity



كهرباء

container



وعاء

fire



نار

zeer pot



إناء من الفخار

preserve



يحفظ

ceramic pot



إناء من الخزف

store (v)



يخزن

can



علبة صفيح

dry



يجفف

jar



برطمان

dried figs



تين مجفف

invent



يخترع

right food



طعام صحيح

fridge



ثلاجة

keep it fresh



نحافظ عليها طازجة

freezer



فريزر

safe



آمن

heat (v)



يسخن

properly



بشكل صحيح

smoked meat



لحم مدخن

go bad



يفسد

add



يضيف

sick



مريض

stay cool



يظل بارد

sand



رمل

use



يستخدم - يستعمل

air



هواء

close



يغلق

taste good



مذاقه جيد

a long time ago



منذ فترة طويلة

grapes



عنب

thousands of years ago



منذ آلاف السنين

Prepositions

look after



يعتني به

at home



في البيت

take out



يُخرج

in the past



في الماضي

take away



يُبعد

all over the world



في كل أنحاء العالم

get into



يدخل

last for years



يستمر لسنوات

Phonics

the "tion" sounds: >>>

nutrition



تغذية

pollution



تلوث

digestion



هضم

fire station



محطة إطفاء

fiction



قصة خيالية

Vocabulary Study

electricity : a form of energy.

fire : burning that gives out bright light, heat, and smoke.

preserve : to keep (something) in its original or existing state.

store : to keep for future use.

dry (v) : to become dry.

dried figs : taking out the water from figs and keeping the nutrients.

container : an object that can be used to hold food.

ceramic pot : pots and other articles made from clay

can (n) : a metal container.

jar : a container made of glass or pottery, especially one used for storing food.



It's important to eat the right food, but it's also important to look after food to keep it fresh and safe. We need to preserve and store food. If we don't store food properly, it can go bad, and this makes us sick. Now, we can use fridges and freezers to store food. These need electricity to work. How can we preserve food if we don't have electricity? And how did people preserve food in the past?

1 Fire

This heats food like smoked meat and fish a long time ago. And we still do it now.

2 Salt

We can add salt to food to preserve it. It takes out the water. People use this all over the world for meat and fish.

3 Drying

We can dry fruit in the sun. Dried apples, figs, grapes, banana and mango are all delicious. When we dry fruit, it takes out the water and keeps the nutrients. The fruit is sweet and delicious, and it's healthy because we don't add sugar.

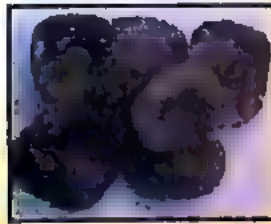
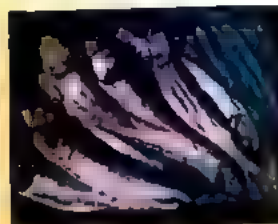
4 Containers

There are different ways of storing food in containers.

5 Zeer pots

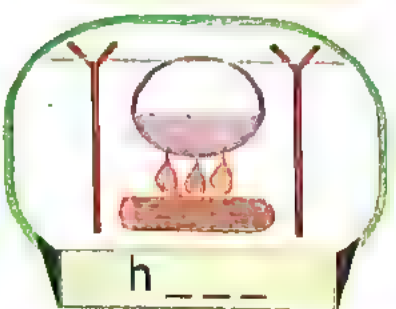
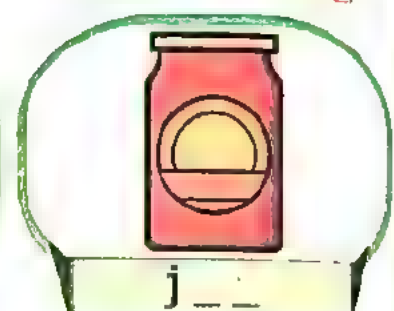
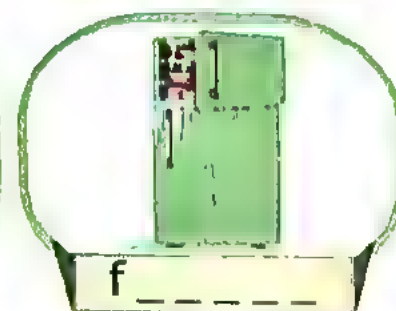
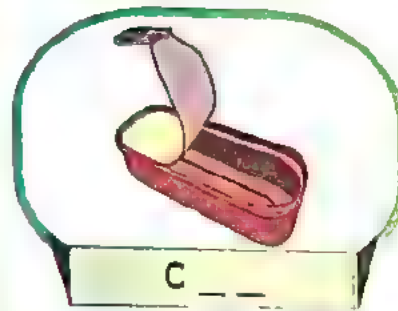
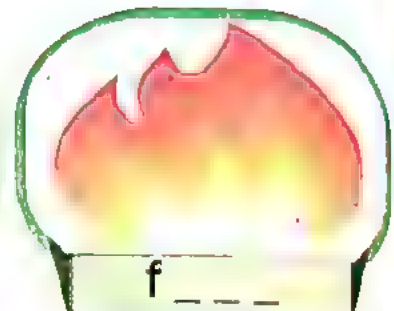
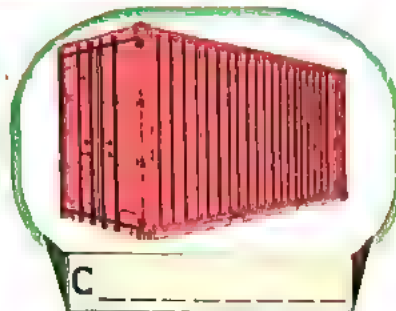
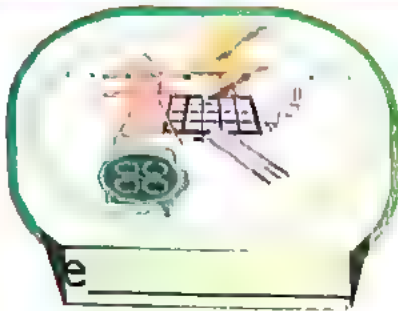
Thousands of years ago, people invented zeer pots to keep food fresh. The food is inside one ceramic pot. This pot is put inside a bigger ceramic pot. You put sand between the two pots, then put water in the sand. The water takes the heat away and the food stays cool.

6 Cans and jars People also use cans and jars to preserve food. You put the food in a liquid with salt, and close the can. No air gets into the jar or can, and the food lasts for years.



Exercises on Lesson 4

1 Supply the missing letters:



2 Complete using the following words:

salt – containers – water – nutrients – electricity – preserve

- 1 When we dry food, we take out the and keep the
- 2 We add to food to it.
- 3 We can store food in
- 4 We need to store food in a fridge.

3 Read the following passage and answer the questions:

It's important to eat the right food, but it's also important to look after food to keep it fresh and safe. We need to preserve and store food. If we don't store food properly, it can go bad, and this makes us sick. Now, we can use fridges and freezers to store food. These need electricity to work. How can we preserve food if we don't have

electricity? And how did people preserve food in the past?

Fire heats food like smoked meat and fish a long time ago. And we still do it now.

We can add salt to food to preserve it. It takes out the water. People use this all over the world for meat and fish.

We can dry fruit in the sun. Dried apples, figs, grapes, bananas and mangoes are all delicious. When we dry fruit, it takes out the water and keeps the nutrients. The fruit is sweet and delicious, and it's healthy because we don't add sugar.

There are different ways of storing food in containers. Thousands of years ago, people invented zeer pots to keep food fresh. The food is inside one ceramic pot. This pot is put inside a bigger ceramic pot. You put sand between the two pots, then put water in the sand. The water takes the heat away and the food stays cool.

People also use cans and jars to preserve food. You put the food in a liquid with salt, and close the can. No air gets into the jar or can, and the food lasts for years.

A. Answer the following questions:

- ① Why should we look after food?
- ② How can we preserve food in cans and jars?

B. Choose the correct answer:






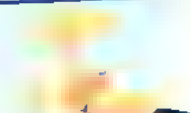




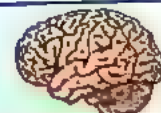
- ③ If we don't store food properly, it can go (**good** – **delicious** – **bad**).
- ④ Dried food is (**healthy** – **unhealthy** – **cold**) because we don't add sugar.

1. Copy the following sentence:

 All things are difficult before they are easy.

LESSON 5 Pages 38-39

A Vocabulary

sugar		سكر	confused		مرتبك
snack		وجبة خفيفة	worried		قلق
damage		يتلف	anxious		متوتر
teeth		أسنان	natural		طبيعي
dentist		طبيب أسنان	heart		قلب
affect		يؤثر في	arteries		شرايين
teaspoon		ملعقة صغيرة	brain		مخ

kind		نوع	carefully		بغاية
more		أكثر	sweet		حلو المذاق
less		أقل	list		قائمة
mood		حالة مزاجية	count		بعد
lowest		الأدنى	stop		يتوقف
highest		الأعلى	as well as		علاوة على
last		يستمر	plain yogurt		زبادي سادة

Prepositions

bad for us



سيء لنا

over a long time



بعد مضي فترة طويلة

write ... down



يدون

over three days



خلال ثلاثة أيام

at night



ليلاً

look at



ينظر إلى

Vocabulary Study

damage (v) : to do harm to someone or something.

dentist : a person that looks after our teeth.

affect : have an effect on.

teaspoon : a small spoon.

confused : unable to think clearly.

worried : troubled about actual or potential problems.

anxious : worried.

What is your favorite snack? There are lots of things we can choose from. Sometimes it's easy to take a cookie or a candy, but they have a lot of sugar in them. Why is sugar bad for us?

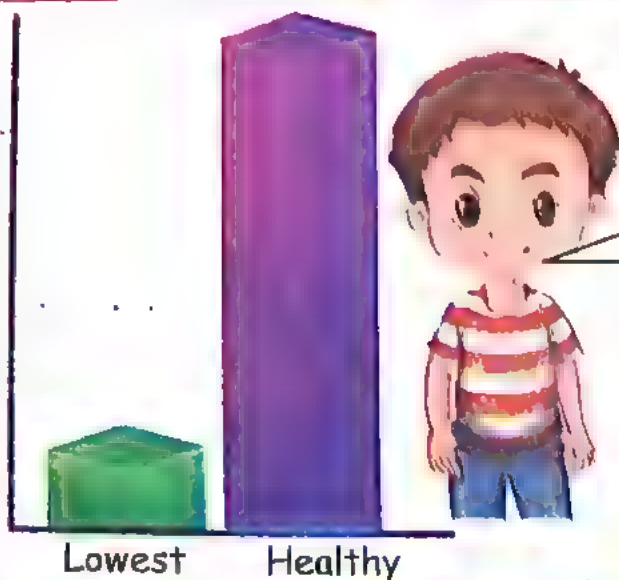
Sugar is bad for our teeth. Eating too much sugar damages our teeth. Do you like going to the dentist?

Sugar is bad for our heart too. It stops our arteries working as well as they should. Over a long time, this can damage our heart.

Sugar gives us energy, but it isn't a good kind. When we get energy from carbohydrates, that energy lasts a long time. When we get energy from sugar, we lose it quickly. Then our body wants more sugar.

Sugar can affect our brains. If we have too much sugar, our brains get a lot of energy quickly. This can make our brain confused. We can feel worried and anxious. Sugar can be bad for our mood.





I decided to eat less sugar. I looked carefully at the snacks I was choosing. Now I have plain yogurt, and I don't drink chocolate milk. I drink more water and I eat fruit. I still enjoy sweet snacks, like chocolate cookies, but I don't eat them every day. I have more energy, and I sleep better at night. I'm happy!

Exercises on Lesson 5

Read the following passage and answer the questions.

What is your favorite snack? There are lots of things we can choose from. Sometimes it's easy to take a cookie or a candy, but they have a lot of sugar in them.

Why is sugar bad for us?

Sugar is bad for our teeth. Eating too much sugar damages our teeth. Do you like going to the dentist?

Sugar is bad for our heart too. It stops our arteries working as well as they should. Over a long time, this can damage our heart.

Sugar gives us energy, but it isn't a good kind. When we get energy from carbohydrates, that energy lasts a long time. When we get energy from sugar, we lose it quickly. Then our body wants more sugar.

Sugar can affect our brains. If we have too much sugar, our brains get a lot of energy quickly. This can make our brain confused. We can feel worried and anxious. Sugar can be bad for our mood.

Answer the following questions:

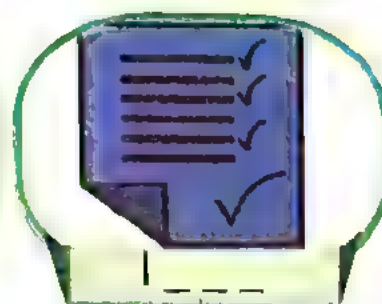
- ① Why is sugar bad for our hearts?
- ② How can sugar affect our brains?

Choose the correct answer:

- ③ We chew food in our (stomach – lungs – mouth).

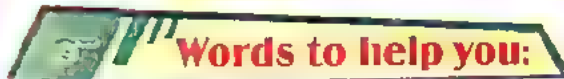
- 4 Our bodies can (**absorb** – **break down** – **get rid of**) the nutrients it needs from the food.

Supply the missing letters:



3 Write a paragraph of four sentences on:

"A list of snacks I eat over two or three days"



find out how much sugar is in them.
Write it down and count the grams.

.....

.....

.....



4 Copy the following sentence:

Money is the root of all evils.

.....

.....

Unit Test 3



Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

(2Ms)

Zeiad Should I eat sweets and candies for breakfast, mom?

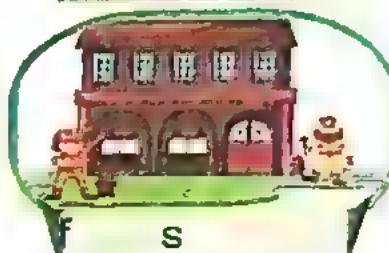
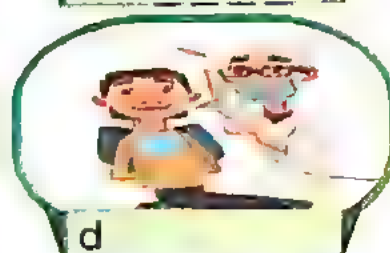
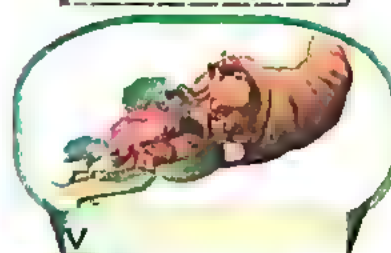
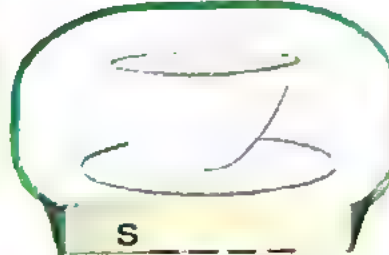
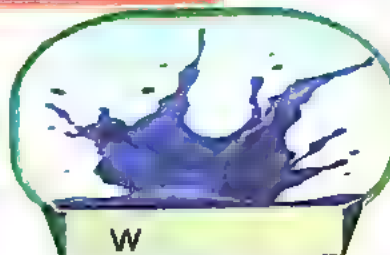
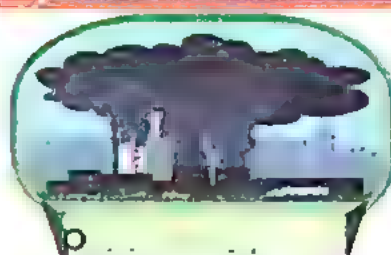
Mom :

Zeiad : ?

Mom : You should eat eggs and drink milk.

Supply the missing letters:

(6Ms)



Choose the correct word in brackets:

(8Ms)

- ① You (should – shouldn't – can't) have a healthy diet.
- ② Candies and cookies contain lots of (fiber – salt – sugar).
- ③ She shouldn't (drink – drinks – drinking) lots of sweet drinks.
- ④ (Sodium – Calories – Calcium) is the amount of energy in food.
- ⑤ If you don't drink enough water, you get (sweat – hydrated – dehydrated).
- ⑥ We should (preserve – taste – contain) food to keep it fresh and safe.
- ⑦ Cereal, bread and pasta contain (protein – vitamins – carbohydrates).
- ⑧ Should I sleep for only four hours? - No, (you should – you shouldn't – I shouldn't).

Rewrite the following sentences doing as shown:

(4Ms)

- ① Drinking pure water is important.

(should)

- ② No, you shouldn't eat unhealthy food.

(should)

- ③ Having sweet snacks is bad for you.

(shouldn't)

- ④ Should I eat lots of carbohydrates?

(No,)

Read the following passage and answer the questions below: (4Ms)

My sister Dalia eats a cheese sandwich and an egg for breakfast. But, my brother Mohamed likes jam. Dalia eats chicken and rice for lunch. But, Mohamed doesn't like chicken. He eats a piece of meat and some chips. They usually have some biscuits and a cup of milk for dinner at nine o'clock in the evening.

Answer the following questions:

- ① What does Dalia have for lunch?
- ② When do they have dinner?

Choose the correct answer

- ① Mohamed doesn't like (meat – fish – chicken).
- ② Mohamed and Dalia like (chicken – meat – biscuits).

Write a paragraph of four sentences on:

(4Ms)

"The foods and drinks I should and shouldn't have"

Ideas to help you

fruit – soda – water – candies



Copy the following sentence:

(2Ms)

A tree is known by its fruit.



In the wild



Lesson 1

Pages 52-53

Vocabulary

sloth		حيوان الكسلان	macaw		ببغاء
cheetah		الفهد	cobra		ثعبان الكوبرا
fennec fox		ثعلب الفينيك	spider monkey		قرد العنكبوت
chimpanzee		شمبانزي	wildlife park		منتزه الحيوانات البرية
sea lion		أسد البحر	webcam		كاميرا ويب

Let's look		هيا ننظر	tail		ذيل
might see		محتمل نرى	big ears		أذنان كبيرتان
great idea		فكرة رائعة	small		صغير
yesterday		بالأمس	animal		حيوان
again		مرة أخرى	very slowly		ببطء جدًا

Conjugation of Verbs

Present		past	Present		past
move	يتحرك	moved	go	يذهب	went
love	يحب	loved	think	يعتقد	thought
have	يمتلك	had	see	يرى	saw

Vocabulary Study

sloth	: a slow-moving tropical American animal that hangs upside down from the branches of trees.
cheetah	: a large spotted cat found in Africa and parts of Asia. It is the fastest animal on land.
fennec fox	: a small pale fox with large pointed ears.
chimpanzee	: a great ape with large ears, mainly black coloration, and lighter skin on the face.
sea lion	: an eared seal found mainly on Pacific coasts.
macaw	: a large long-tailed parrot that is brightly colored.
cobra	: highly venomous snake native to Africa and Asia.
spider monkey	: a South American monkey with very long limbs and a long tail.
wildlife park	: a park where you can see wild animals in their natural habitat.
webcam	: a video camera that inputs to a computer connected to the internet, so that its images can be viewed by Internet users.



I went to the wildlife park and I saw an animal. It was small. It had a tail.



No. It had big ears.

Yes, it was!

Was it a spider monkey?



Was it a fennec fox?

B Structures

Verb to be in the past

was

(I - He - She - It - Singular) أي اسم مفرد

were

(You - We - They - Plural) أي اسم جمع

- * I was happy with my friends yesterday.
- * He was at home on Friday.
- * It was great at the wildlife park.
- * Mona and Henda were at the park.
- * Where were they yesterday?
- * They were at the wildlife park.
- * Was it a fennec fox?
- * Yes, it was.

Past simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Affirmative الإنشاء	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I He She It You We They <div>played</div>	I He She It You We They <div>did not play</div> <div>didn't play</div>	I play he play she play it play you play we play they play <div>Did</div>

التصريف الثاني للفعل

يتكون من

○ The fennec fox had big ears.

○ I loved seeing the chimpanzees yesterday.

★ We use it to express actions that happened in the past.

★ يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث وقعت في الماضي.

★ In the negative form, we use (didn't) before the bare verb.

★ ننفي الماضي البسيط باستخدام (didn't) ثم الفعل في المصدر.

- Ola didn't see the cobra yesterday.

★ In the interrogative form, we use (Did) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the bare verb.

★ عند عمل سؤال على الماضي البسيط، نبدأ السؤال بـ (Did) ثم الفعل في المصدر.

○ Did you go to the wildlife park?

☞ Yes, I went to the wildlife park. **or** ☞ Yes, I did.

○ What did she see yesterday?

☞ She saw lots of animals.



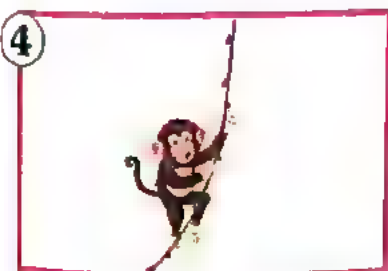
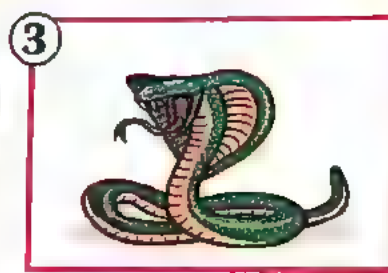
Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Hani : I saw an animal. It was small. It had a tail.
 Maged : Was it a spider monkey?
 Hani :
 Maged : ?
 Hani : Yes, it was a fennec fox.

2 Write the correct word under each picture:

cheetah – fennec fox – wildlife park – chimpanzee – sloth
 – sea lion – macaw – spider monkey – cobra






B Choose the correct word(s): Structures

- ① I (go – goes – went) to the wildlife park yesterday.
- ② (Was – Were – Are) it a spider monkey?
- ③ The animal that I saw yesterday (has – had – have) big ears.
- ④ Let's (looked – looks – look) on the wildlife park webcam.
- ⑤ The sloth (moves – move – moved) slowly yesterday.
- ⑥ (Is – Was – Were) your school day great yesterday?
- ⑦ I (see – seeing – saw) a macaw in the tree yesterday.
- ⑧ Was it a sea lion? - No, it (was – Isn't – wasn't).

1 Copy the following sentence:

 A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.



Lesson 2 Pages 54-55

A Vocabulary

animal behavior		سلوك الحيوانات	the wild		البرية
behave		يسلك - يتصرف	natural habitat		موطن طبيعي
build nests		يبنى أعشاش	river		نهر
dig burrows		يحفر جحور	hunt		يصطاد حيوانات
shelter		مأوى	hide		يختبئ
hole		حفرة	chase		يطارد
grass		حشائش - عشب	gather		يجمع - يجتمع
stick		عصا	large group		مجموعة ضخمة
leaves		أوراق الشجر	colony		مجموعة حيوانات

squirrel		سنجاب	owl		بومة
crayfish		جراد البحر	penguin		بطريق
turtle		سلحفاة	elephant		فيل
mole		حيوان الخلد	lion		أسد
rabbit		أرنب	fox		ثعلب
goose		وزة	blue whale		الحوت الأزرق

safe		آمن	earth		الأرض
safely		بأمان	ground		ارض
correct		صحيح	sand		رمل
incorrect		غير صحيح	place		مكان
the biggest		الأكبر	Africa		قارة أفريقيا
Animal Show		عرض الحيوانات	world		العالم
How many		كم عدد	together		معا - سوياً
How long		ما المدة	meat		لحمة
What might happen next?		ماذا محتمل أن يحدث بعد ذلك؟	sometimes		أحياناً

protect		يحمي	stay		يمكث - يظل
stay warm		يظل دافئاً	guess		يخمن
called		تسمي	climb		يتسلق
swim		يسبح - يعوم	do		يفعل
find		يجد	get		يحصل على
take		ياخذ	make		يصنع
learn		نتعلم	use		يستخدم - يستعمل

Prepositions

able to	قادرة على	in the day time	في وقت النهار
close to	بالقرب من	at night	ليلاً
come out	يخرج	Welcome to	مرحباً بكم في
under rocks	تحت الصخر	live in	يعيش في

Vocabulary Study

behavior	: the way in which one acts.
nest	: a structure or place made or chosen by a bird for laying eggs and sheltering its young.
burrows	: a hole or tunnel dug by a small animal as a shelter.
shelter	: a place giving protection from bad weather or danger.
hole	: a hollow place in a solid body or surface.
habitat	: the natural home or environment of an animal.
colony	: a group of animals of one kind living close together.
gather	: to come or bring together.
the wild	: the natural state where wild animals live.
hunt	: to catch or kill an animal.
hide	: to put or keep out of sight.
chase	: to run after in order to catch.
squirrel	: an animal that looks like a rabbit, feeding on nuts and seeds.
crayfish	: a living creature that resembles a small lobster and inhabits streams and rivers.
turtle	: a large marine reptile with a shell and flippers.
mole	: a small burrowing animal with dark fur, and very small eyes.
owl	: a bird of prey with large forward-facing eyes surrounded by facial disks, a hooked beak, and typically a loud call.
penguin	: a large seabird, with black upper parts and white under parts and wings developed into flippers for swimming under water.
blue whale	: a very large marine animal, the biggest animal in the world.
goose	: a large water bird with a long neck, short legs, webbed feet.

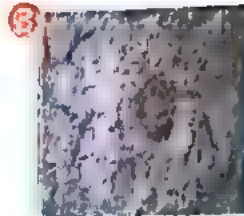


- 1 When we visit a wildlife park, we can learn how animals behave by watching what they do in wildlife parks, animals live in places which are close to their natural habitat. But how do animals behave in the wild?

Animals live in habitats where they can get food and water, and live safely. Animals take shelter so they can stay warm, be safe from other animals, and protect their families.

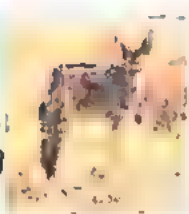


2 Lots of birds build nests in trees. They use grass, sticks and leaves.



3 Other birds such as owls live in holes in trees. They don't make holes. They find them.

- 4 Rabbits and foxes dig burrows in the ground. They can take shelter here. They dig in earth or sand.



- 5 Crayfish live in rivers. They hide under rocks in the day time and come out to find food at night.



6 Lions and cheetahs hunt other animals to eat. Sometimes it's difficult to get food.

- Welcome to the Animal Show! Look! What do you know about this animal? What do elephants eat?
- Hmm. They're very big, but I don't think they eat meat. I think they might eat grass.
- Correct! Ok, next. Is the elephant the biggest animal in the world?
- Er, no. I don't think it is. I think blue whales might be the biggest animals in the world.
- Correct again. Last question. Elephants can swim, true or false?
- Well, they don't live near the sea, so I think they might not be able to swim.
- That's incorrect - elephants can swim in rivers very well!



might

ربما

★ تعبر عن احتمال حدوث فعل.

might not

ربما لا

★ تعبر عن احتمال عدم حدوث فعل.

○ I might go to the park on Friday.

○ He might not come to school. He's sick. .

★ لاحظ أن (might – might not) لابد أن يتبعا بالمصدر.

Exercises on Lesson 2

Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue.

Tarek :?

Nader : I might go to the club tomorrow.

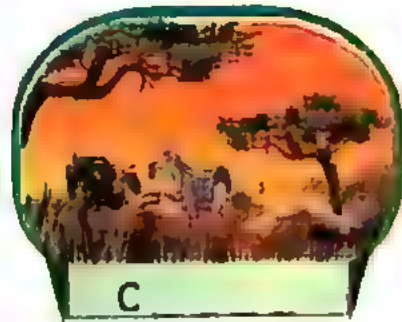
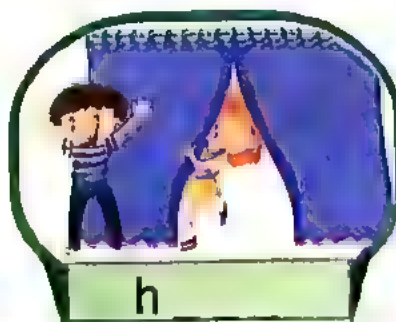
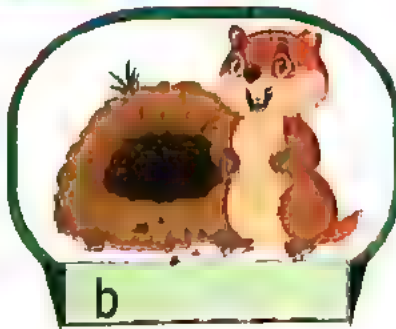
Tarek : What might happen next?

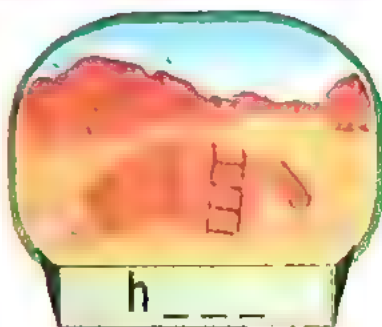
Nader :

Tarek : What might not you do tomorrow?

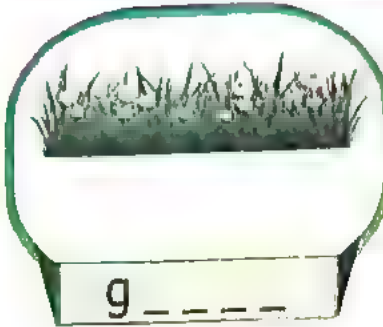
Nader :

Supply the missing letters.





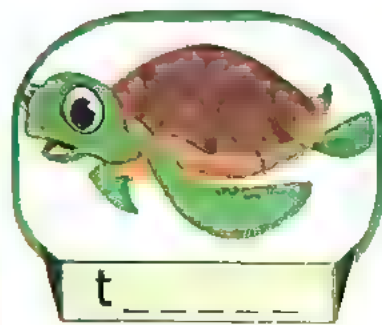
h _ _ _



g _ _ _



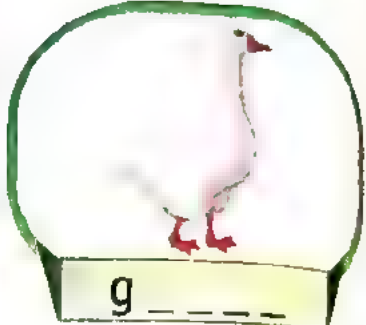
l _ _ _



t _ _ _



r _ _ _



g _ _ _



o _ _ _



p _ _ _



w _ _ _



Choose the correct word(s): Structures

- ① We (might – might not) play football. It's very hot today.
- ② I (might – might not) eat a sandwich. I'm hungry.
- ③ It might (live – lives – lived) in Africa.
- ④ She (might – might not) come to the party. She wants to see her friends.
- ⑤ He (might – might not) watch TV tonight. He has lots of homework to do.
- ⑥ It might not (climbed – climbs – climb) trees.

- ⑦ Dalia (might – might not) drink a hot drink. She feels cold.
- ⑧ The animal might (building – builds – build) a nest.
- ⑨ Fady (might – might not) be able to swim. He doesn't like swimming.
- ⑩ It might not (digs – dig – digging) burrows.

Read the following passage and answer the questions:

When we visit a wildlife park, we can learn how animals behave by watching what they do in wildlife parks, animals live in places which are close to their natural habitat. But how do animals behave in the wild?

Animals live in habitats where they can get food and water, and live safely. Animals take shelter so they can stay warm, be safe from other animals, and protect their families.

Lots of birds build nests in trees. They use grass, sticks and leaves.

Other birds such as owls live in holes in trees. They don't make holes. They find them.

Rabbits and foxes dig burrows in the ground. They can take shelter here. They dig in earth or sand.

Crayfish live in rivers. They hide under rocks in the day time and come out to find food at night.

Lions and cheetahs hunt other animals to eat. Sometimes it's difficult to get food.

Answer the following questions:

- ① How can we learn how animals behave?
- ② Why do animals take shelter?

Complete the following sentences:


- ① Some birds build in trees.
- ② Owls live in in trees.

- 3 Rabbits and foxes dig to live in. they take in their burrows.
- 4 Crayfish under rocks in rivers.
- 5 Lions and cheetahs and other animals.
- 6 Penguins in a colony to keep warm.

Read and match:

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| 1 A penguin | a) takes shelter under rocks in rivers. |
| 2 An owl | b) hunt other animals to eat. |
| 3 A crayfish | c) lives in a large group called a colony. |
| 4 Lions and cheetahs | d) lives in a hole in a tree. |







Copy the following sentence:

 Satisfaction is endless treasure.

A Vocabulary

desert		صحراء	North Pole		القطب الشمالي
rainforest		غابة	South Pole		القطب الجنوبي
grassland		أرض عشبية	polar		قطبي (شمال أو جنوبي)
wetland		أرض رطبة (بها ماء)	tropical parts		أماكن استوائية
landscape		مظاهر السطح	equator		خط الاستواء
swamp		مستنقع	Arctic		قطبي شمالي

particular kind		نوع معين	snow		جليد
climate		مناخ	ice		ثلج
non-living things		كائنات غير حية	cold		بارد
plants		نباتات	hot		حار
tree roots		جذور الشجر	wet		مبتل
conditions		أحوال - ظروف	near		قريب
colored feathers		ريش ملون	look white		يبدو أبيض
grow		تنمو - تنمو	light fur		فرو خفيف
all the time		طوال الوقت	dark		مظلم

imaginary line		خط خيالي	the most sunshine		سقوط الشمس الأكثر
the furthest north		أقصى الشمال	all month of the year		كل شهور السنة
parts of the world		أجزاء من العالم	point		نقطة

Prepositions

all over the world – around the world
في كل أنحاء العالم

on the ground على الأرض

the middle of the Earth
منتصف الكرة الأرضية

on land على الأرض

on the map

على الخريطة

in the water في الماء

Vocabulary Study

desert	: a dry, barren area of land, especially one covered with sand.
rainforest	: a dense forest rich in plants, birds and animals, found typically in tropical areas with consistently heavy rainfall.
grassland	: a large open area of country covered with grass.
wetland	: land consisting of swamps.
landscape	: all the visible features of an area of countryside or land.
swamp	: an area of low-lying ground where water collects.
North Pole	: the point at the furthest north of the world.
South Pole	: the point at the furthest south of the world.
polar	: relating to the North or South Pole.
tropical parts	: the areas around the equator.
equator	: an imaginary line all around the middle of the Earth.
Arctic	: relating to the regions around the North Pole.
sunshine	: direct sunlight over a large area.
climate	: the weather conditions in an area in general or over a long period.
world	: the earth, together with all of its countries, peoples, and natural features.
mole	: a small burrowing animal with dark fur, and very small eyes.
non-living things	: things that have no life.

A habitat is a place with a particular kind of climate and landscape. There are different habitats all over the world. They have different animals, plants and non-living things.

Compare these three habitats:

In a polar habitat, there is snow and ice, and everything looks white. There aren't any trees, and the plants are small. Animals can take shelter in burrows.

There are rainforests in warm, tropical parts of the world. Lots of animals here live in the trees and eat leaves and fruit. It is hot and wet, and the trees grow lots of fruit.

A wetland can be wet all the time. Wetlands can be near the sea or near a river. A swamp is a wetland where there are lots of trees. The tree roots can be in the water and animals hide in them.



There are different habitats around the world because of the different climate and conditions. Some parts of the world are cold, and some are hot.

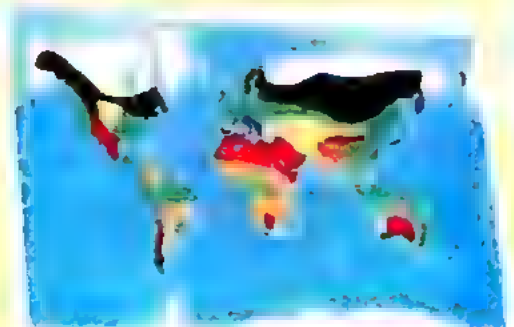
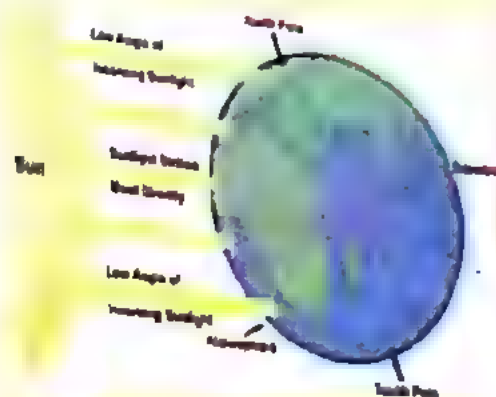
Equator – this is an imaginary line all around the middle of the Earth.

North Pole – this is the point at the furthest north of the world.

South Pole – this is the point at the furthest south of the world.

The equator gets the most sunshine. It is hot here for all 12 months of the year. The North and South Pole don't get a lot of sunshine. It is very cold in these parts of the world.

We can see the different habitats on a map of the world.

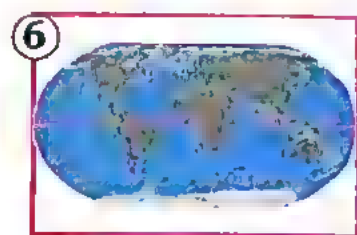
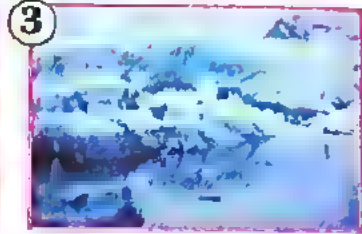


Polar area Tundra Desert Cold forest Temperate forest Rain forest Hot forest

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Write the correct word under each picture:

polar – wetland – grassland – equator – desert – rainforest



2 Read the following passage and answer the questions:

A habitat is a place with a particular kind of climate and landscape. There are different habitats all over the world. They have different animals, plants and non-living things.

In a polar habitat, there is snow and ice, and everything looks white. There aren't any trees, and the plants are small. Animals can take shelter in burrows.

There are rainforests in warm, tropical parts of the world. Lots of animals here live in the trees and eat leaves and fruit. It is hot and wet, and the trees grow lots of fruit.

A wetland can be wet all the time. Wetlands can be near the sea or near a river. A swamp is a wetland where there are lots of trees. The tree roots can be in the water and animals hide in them.

Complete the following sentences: Write (polar-wetland-rainforest)

- ① An Arctic fox is white. It digs burrows in the ground.
- ② A spider monkey eats fruit and lives in trees.



- ③ Crayfish often live in dark, warm water and take shelter in tree roots.
- ④ Macaws have beautiful colored feathers. They eat fruit and leaves.
- ⑤ Wolves have light colored fur. They eat rabbits and other animals that live on the ground.
- ⑥ Turtles eat plants and animals in the water and on land.

Read the following passage and answer the questions:

There are different habitats around the world because of the different climate and conditions. Some parts of the world are cold, and some are hot.

Equator is an imaginary line all around the middle of the Earth.

North Pole is the point at the furthest north of the world.

South Pole is the point at the furthest south of the world.

The equator gets the most sunshine. It is hot here for all 12 months of the year. The North and South Pole don't get a lot of sunshine. It is very cold in these parts of the world.

We can see the different habitats on a map of the world.

Answer the following questions:

- ① Why is the equator the hottest part of the world?
- ② Why are the North and South Poles colder?
- ③ What habitats can you find near the equator?
- ④ What habitats do you know in Egypt?

Copy the following sentence:

 You never know what you can do until you try.

Lesson 4 Pages 58-59

Vocabulary

emergent layer		الطبقة العليا (قمم الأشجار)	rainforest		غابة
top layer		الطبقة العليا	humid		رطب
canopy layer		طبقة المظلة (ورق الأشجار)	support		بدعم - يساند
understory layer		طبقة سفلية	ecosystem		نظام بيئي
forest floor		أرضية الغابة	inside		داخل

NNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNN

insects		حشرات	rain (v)		تمطر
birds		طيور	including		مشملاً على
spider		عنكبوت	fall down		تسقط
butterflies		فراشات	through		خلال - من خلال
lizard		سحلية	get through		تتخلل - تخترق
frog		ضفدع	above		أعلى - فوق
snake		ثعبان	hear		يسمع
crawl		يزحف	see		يرى
hunt for food		يصطاد من أجل الطعام	touch		يلمس
amazing		مدهش	smell		يشم

swamp		مستنقع	hunt		يصاد
camp		معسكر - يعسكر	grassland		أرض عشبية
tent		خيمة	wetland		أرض رطبة

NNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNN

Vocabulary Study

emergent layer	: the name given to the tops of trees that poke up above the rainforest. It is very sunny here and only the strongest and tallest plants reach this level.
canopy layer	: refers to the upper layer or habitat zone, formed by mature tree crowns.
understory layer	: the underlying layer of vegetation in a forest or wooded area, especially the trees and shrubs growing between the forest canopy and the forest floor.
forest floor	: It mainly consists of leaves, branches, bark, and stems, existing above the soil surface.
humid	: marked by a high level of water vapor in the atmosphere.
support(v)	: to give help to.
ecosystem	: It is a community or group of living organisms that live in and interact with each other in a specific environment.
lizard	: a reptile that typically has a long body and tail, four legs, movable eyelids, and a rough, scaly, or spiny skin.
crawl	: move forward on the hands and knees or by dragging the body close to the ground.
hunt	: to catch or kill (a wild animal) for sport or food.

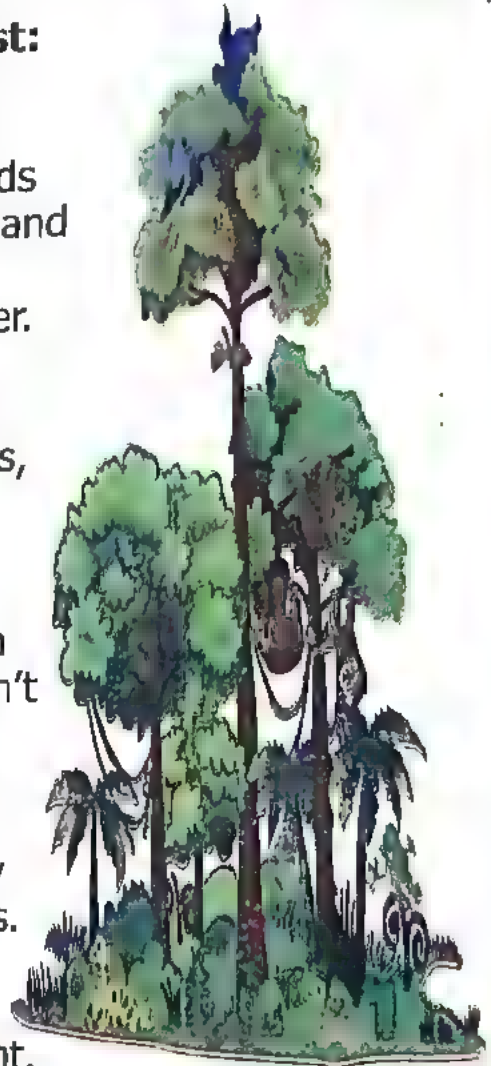
Inside the rainforest

A rainforest is an amazing habitat. There are many different plants, trees, animals, insects and birds. It rains a lot, and it is very hot. This makes it humid.

All parts of the rainforest **support** each other. This is called an 'ecosystem'.

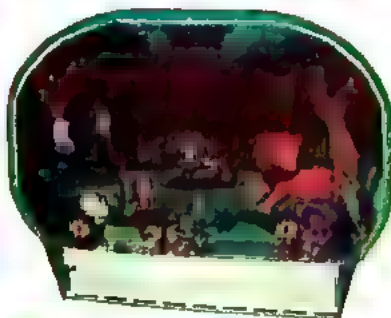
There are four layers in a rainforest:

- ① The top layer is called the 'emergent layer'. This is the top of the trees. Not many animals live here – there are birds (such as macaws), spiders, butterflies and some small monkeys.
- ② The canopy layer is under the top layer. There is shelter and lots of food such as fruit and nuts here. Lots of animals live in the canopy layer, including sloths, monkeys and birds.
- ③ The understory layer is under the canopy. There isn't a lot of sun here, so it's dark and humid. Rain falls down through the layers above, but there isn't a lot of sun. There are lots of insects, lizards and frogs. Other larger animals hunt for food in the understory layer.
- ④ On the forest floor, it is very dark. Very little sunlight can get through the trees. Snakes crawl on the rainforest floor. Because it's dark, plants here need to have big leaves so they can get sunlight.

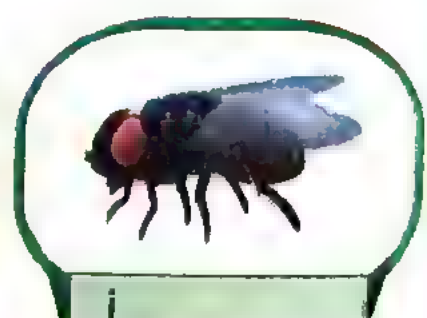


Exercises on Lesson 4

1 Supply the missing letters:



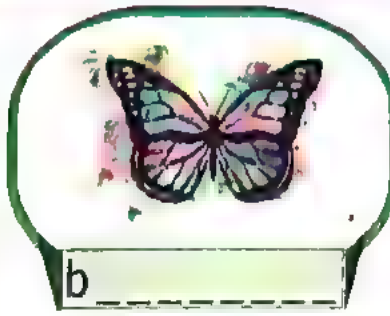
t



i



s _ _ _



b _ _ _



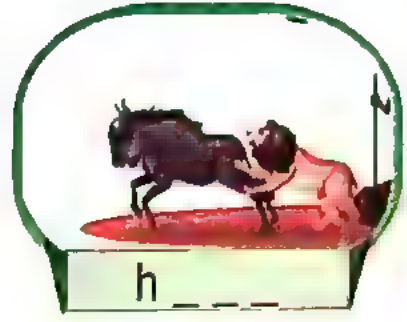
l _ _ _



f _ _ _



s _ _ _



h _ _ _

Read the following passage and answer the questions:

A rainforest is an amazing habitat. There are many different plants, trees, animals, insects and birds. It rains a lot, and it is very hot. This makes it humid.

All parts of the rainforest support each other. This is called an 'ecosystem'.

There are four layers in a rainforest:

The top layer is called the 'emergent layer'. This is the top of the trees. Not many animals live here – there are birds (such as macaws), spiders, butterflies and some small monkeys.

The canopy layer is under the top layer. There is shelter and lots of food such as fruit and nuts here. Lots of animals live in the canopy layer, including sloths, monkeys and birds.

The understory layer is under the canopy. There isn't a lot of sun here, so it's dark and humid. Rain falls down through the layers above, but there isn't a lot of sun. There are lots of insects, lizards and frogs. Other larger animals hunt for food in the understory layer.

On the forest floor, it is very dark. Very little sunlight can get through the trees. Snakes crawl on the rainforest floor. Because it's dark, plants here need to have big leaves.

**Read and mark (✓) or (x):**

- ① Sloths live in the emergent layer.
- ② There aren't a lot of animals in the emergent layer.
- ③ There are lots of things to eat in the canopy layer.
- ④ Not many animals live in the canopy layer.
- ⑤ It is dark in the understory layer.
- ⑥ Plants on the forest floor have small leaves.

**Read again and complete:**

- ① Birds and butterflies and small monkeys live in the layer.
- ② There is shelter and lots of in the canopy layer.
- ③ Monkeys, and birds live in the canopy layer.
- ④ The understory layer is and darker than the canopy layer.
- ⑤ Lizards, and insects live in the understory layer.
- ⑥ The plants on the have big leaves.
- ⑦ Very little gets through trees on the forest floor.

**Copy the following sentence:**

Think before you talk.

Lesson 5 Pages 60-61

A Vocabulary

deforestation		إزالة الغابات	drought		جفاف
habitat		موطن	flood		فيضان
ash		رماد بركاني	fire		حريق
changes		تغيرات	volcanoes		براكين
pollute		يلوث	natural disasters		كوارث طبيعية
pollution		تلوث	human activity		نشاط إنساني
destroy		يدمر	building		بناء - مبنى
damage		يتلف	environment		بيئة

chemicals		مواد كيميائية	erupt		ينثور (للبركان)
garbage		قمامة	lose		يفقد - يخسر
machine		آلة	cover		يغطي
office		مكتب	grow		تنمو
factory		مصنع	dry (adj)		جاف
smoke (n)		دخان	heavy rain		مطر غزير
dirty		قذر - متسخ	storm		عاصفة
as well as		علاوة على	leave		يترك - يغادر

nutrients		مواد مغذية	healthier		أكثر صحة
minerals		معادن	crowded		مزدحم
soil		تربة	city		مدينة
dead trees		أشجار ميتة	jobs		وظائف
can be burned		يمكن أن تحرق	wildlife		حياة البرية
lake		بحيرة	somewhere else		مكان آخر
edge		حافة	new farm		مزرعة جديدة
relax		يسترخي	keep animals		يربي حيوانات
bring		يُحضر	more land		أرض أكثر

Prepositions

reasons for	أسباب لـ	good for	جيد لـ
cut down	تقطع - تبتز	bad for	سيء لـ
for farming	للزراعة	fall to the ground	تسقط على الأرض
in the air	في الهواء	overflow of water	فيضان الماء
in the short term	على المدى القصير	in the future	في المستقبل
in balance	في توازن	put into	يضع في
agree with	يتفق مع	both of them	كلًا من

Vocabulary Study

deforestation	: the action of clearing a wide area of trees.
ash	: the powdery remains left after the burning of a substance.
pollution	: things that have harmful or poisonous effects to the environment.
drought	: a period of low rainfall, leading to a shortage of water.
flood	: an overflowing of a large amount of water, especially over what is normally dry land.
fire	: burning, that gives out bright light, heat, and smoke.
volcano	: a mountain or hill, having a crater through which lava, rock fragments, hot vapor, and gas are being or have been erupted.
disasters	: a sudden event, such as a natural catastrophe, that causes great damage or loss of life.
human activity	: something that people do or cause to happen.
environment	: the surroundings or conditions in which a person, animal, or plant lives.
destroy	: put an end to the existence of (something) by damaging it.
damage	: to break something, spoil it physically, or stop it from working properly.
erupt	: (of a volcano) becomes active and gives out lava, ash, and gases.
garbage	: rubbish.
crowded	: full of people or other things, leaving little or no room for movement.

Animals and plants live together in balance in different habitats. But what happens when things change? There are lots of reasons for changes.

Human activity:

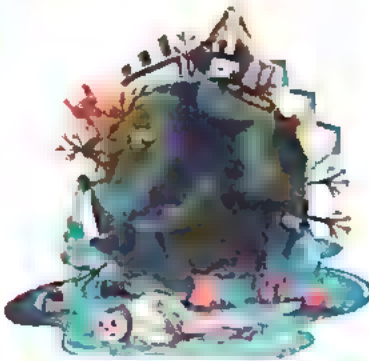
Deforestation

People cut down forests and rainforests to use the trees, or to make land for farming. This destroys the habitats of hundreds of animals, birds and plants.



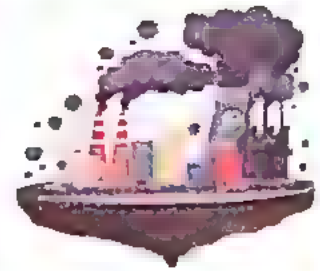
Building

New buildings for homes, offices and factories can destroy habitats. They can be good for people, but bad for the animals that lose their homes.



Pollution

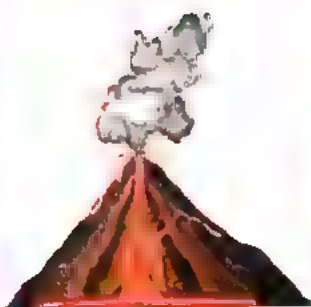
Pollution can be on land, in water, or in the air. People leave garbage on the land and in rivers and seas. We put chemicals in rivers and seas, and damage the air with machines and fires.



Natural disasters:

Volcanoes

When a volcano erupts, ash falls to the ground and covers it. In the short term, plants can't grow. The ash pollutes the air.



Drought

When there isn't enough rain, the ground is dry and plants can't grow. Animals can't find water to drink. Farmers can't grow food.

Flood

In a flood, there is an overflow of water to land that is usually dry. This can happen in heavy rain or a storm. Floods can destroy natural habitats as well as people's homes.



Fire

Fires can happen in forests or grassland. Fire can destroy many habitats very quickly. The smoke pollutes the air.



I think it is a good idea to build the new homes. People need homes to live in. The city is crowded with too many houses. It will make jobs for lots of people. We can plant new trees after they build the homes. The animals will find somewhere else to live. It will be a beautiful place for people to live in.

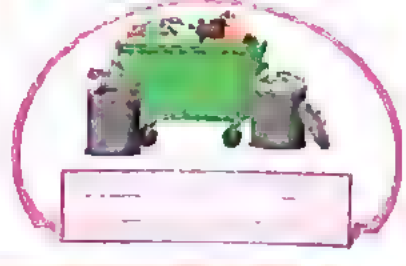
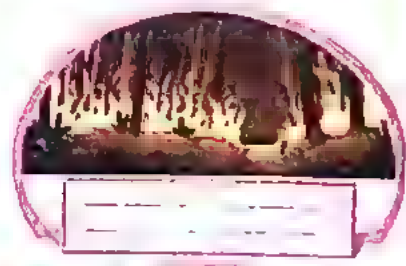


I don't think we should build twenty new homes next to the lake on the edge of our town. The lake is a habitat for lots of wildlife. These are birds, fish, insects, snakes and frogs. There are lots of different trees and plants. It is also a beautiful place for people to visit and relax. The new homes will destroy this habitat. The machines will pollute the air and the water.

Exercises on Lesson 5

1 Write the correct word under each picture.

deforestation – pollution – drought – volcano – flood – fire – garbage – machine – factory



1 Read the following passage and answer the questions:

Animals and plants live together in balance in different habitats. But what happens when things change? There are lots of reasons for changes.

The first reason is deforestation. People cut down forests and rainforests to use the trees, or to make land for farming. This destroys the habitats of hundreds of animals, birds and plants.

The second reason is pollution. Pollution can be on land, in water, or in the air. People leave garbage on the land and in rivers and seas. We put chemicals in rivers and seas, and damage the air with machines and fires.

The third reason is building. New buildings for homes, offices and factories can destroy habitats. They can be good for people, but bad for the animals that lose their homes.

The fourth reason is volcanoes. When a volcano erupts, ash falls to the ground and covers it. In the short term, plants can't grow. The ash pollutes the air.

The fifth reason is drought. When there isn't enough rain, the ground is dry and plants can't grow. Animals can't find water to drink. Farmers can't grow food.

The sixth reason is flood. In a flood, there is an overflow of water to land that is usually dry. This can happen in heavy rain or a storm. Floods can destroy natural habitats as well as people's homes.

The seventh reason is fire. Fires can happen in forests or grassland. Fire can destroy many habitats very quickly. The smoke pollutes the air.

Write the word that refers to each sentence:

- ① Making land, water or air dirty.
- ② Destroying habitats to make homes or offices.
- ③ Ash from these can cover the ground.
- ④ Cutting down trees.
- ⑤ When water covers the land.
- ⑥ This can destroy a habitat quickly.
- ⑦ When there isn't enough water.

Read again and write one word from the passage:

- ① is when there is too much rain onto land that is usually dry.
- ② is when people cut down forests.
- ③ makes the land, air and water dirty.
- ④ new homes can destroy habitats.
- ⑤ When a erupts, falls on the ground.
- ⑥ When it's dry, can't grow, and farmers can't grow
- ⑦ A is when there isn't enough rain.

Read these positive effects and write the correct word then answer:


fire – volcano – flood

- ① Water can bring new nutrients to the land. This helps plants to grow in the future.
- ② There are minerals in the ash which are good for the soil. The soil will be healthier after some time.
- ③ Dead trees and leaves on the forest floor can be burned. This puts important nutrients into the soil.

Read again and choose:

- ① A flood can help the land because
 - a) water brings nutrients to the land.
 - b) there will be lots of fish.
- ② Ash from volcanoes can help the land because
 - a) animals like to eat the ash.
 - b) the ash is good for the soil.
- ③ When fires burn dead leaves and plants
 - a) the nutrients go into the soil.
 - b) the nutrients are lost.

Copy the following sentence:

 A good book is a good friend.

Unit Test 4 4



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue. (2Ms)

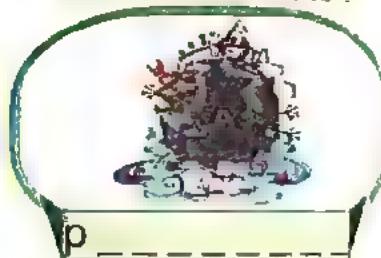
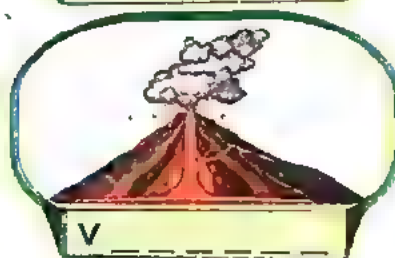
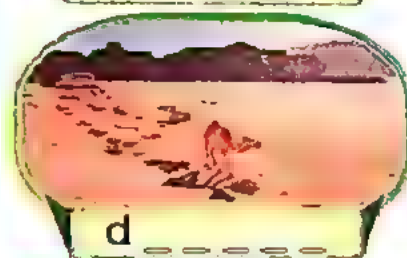
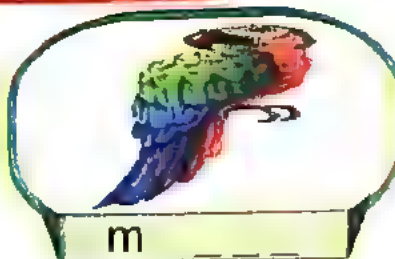
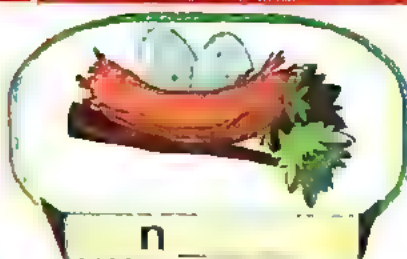
Amar : What might you do after school?

Fady :

Amar : What might happen next?

Fady : ?

2 Supply the missing letters: (6Ms)



3 Choose the correct word in brackets: (8Ms)

- ① The (**South Pole** – North Pole – equator) is the point at the furthest north of the world.
- ② I (**might** – will – might not) go out. It's very cold outside.
- ③ Lions and cheetahs (**hunt** – grow – hide) other animals for food.
- ④ She (**might** – might not – can't) come with us to the zoo. She likes animals.
- ⑤ The (**cheetah** – fennec fox – sloth) moves very slowly.
- ⑥ He might (**eats** – eat – ate) chicken for dinner.
- ⑦ The (**swamp** – tropical – polar) parts of the world are very hot.
- ⑧ (**Did** – Were – Was) it a spider monkey? - No. It had big ears.

4 Rewrite the following sentences doing as shown: (4Ms)

- ① She might drink orange juice.

(not)

- ② I went to the wildlife park.

(Where)

3 What might you do tomorrow?



(I)

4 It had a long tail.



(not)

Read the following passage and answer the questions below:

(4Ms)

I don't think we should build twenty new homes next to the lake on the edge of our town. The lake is a habitat for lots of wildlife. These are birds, fish, insects, snakes and frogs. There are lots of different trees and plants. It is also a beautiful place for people to visit and relax. The new homes will destroy this habitat. The machines will pollute the air and the water.

A Answer the following questions:

1 Why shouldn't we build new homes next to the lake?

2 Do you agree with the writer?

B Choose the correct answer:

3 The lake is on the (middle – top – edge) of the town.

4 The machines will (erupt – pollute – hunt) the air and the water.

Write a paragraph of four sentences on:

(4Ms)

"The animals you know and where they live"

Ideas to help you:

penguin – camel – lion – monkey – polar bear – birds



Copy the following sentence:

(2Ms)



It's no use crying over spilt milk.



A Vocabulary

Siwa Oasis		واحة سيوة	shade		ظل
spring		عين مائية	herb		عشب
underground river		نهر جوفي	olive oil		زيت زيتون
lake		بحيرة	storm		عاصفة
surface		سطح	sandstorm		عاصفة رملية
soak		تشرب - تَمْنَص - يتخلل	protect		يحمي
desert		صحراء	protection		حماية
mountain		جبل	monuments		آثار
wood		خشب	ground		ارض

olive tree



شجرة زيتون

acacia



شجر الصمغ - سنط

tamarisk



شجرة نحيلة الأغصان

basil



ريحان

palm tree



نخلة spearmint



نعناع

plants



نباتات leaves



أوراق الشجر

dates



بلح fruit



ثمار - فاكهة

provide



يمد - يزود farmer



فلاح

shelter



ماوى grow trees



يؤزرع اشجار

fresh water



ماء عذب medicine



دواء

pretty flowers



زهور جميلة sick



مريض

special place



مكان مميز vitamins



فيتامينات

interesting place



مكان ممتع minerals



معادن

hot



حار

make baskets



يصنع سلات

dry



جاف

bowl



سلطانية

hard



صلب

spoon



ملعقة

old



قديم

food



طعام

useful things 	أشياء مفيدة	drink (n) 	مشروب
delicious 	لذيذة	animals 	حيوانات
different ways 	طرق مختلفة	family 	أسرة - عائلة
whole <i>whole</i>	كل - جميع	three times <i>123</i>	ثلاث مرات
where <i>where</i>	حيث	such as 	مثل
What else? 	وماذا أيضًا؟	as well <i>as well</i>	أيضًا

Prepositions

look after	يعتني بـ	into the Earth	داخل الأرض
fall to	يسقط على	good for you	جيد لك
come up	يصعد	for thousands of years	لآلاف السنين

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs

Present		past	Past participle
visit	يزور	visited	visited
cook	يطهي	cooked	cooked
protect	يحمي	protected	protected
walk	يمشي	walked	walked
climb	يتسلق	climbed	climbed
look after	يعتني بـ	looked after	looked after
live	يعيش	lived	lived
provide	يمد - يزود	provided	provided
use	يستخدم - يستعمل	used	used
try	يحاول - يجرب	tried	tried

Irregular verbs

Present		past	Past participle
see	يرى	saw	seen
eat	ياكل	ate	eaten
swim	يسبح - يعوم	swam	swum
come up	يصعد	came up	come up
fall	يسقط - يقع	fell	fallen
make	يصنع	made	made
give	يعطي	gave	given
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
put	يضع	put	put
get	يحصل على	got	got
take	ياخذ	took	taken
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk

Vocabulary Study

Siwa Oasis	: A famous oasis in the western desert in Egypt.
spring	: a source of water from the ground, particularly a very small pond.
underground	: beneath the surface of the ground.
river	: a large natural stream of fresh water flowing in a channel.
lake	: an area filled with water, surrounded by land.
surface	: the outside part or the top layer of something.
soak	: to pass, as a liquid, through holes.
shade	: screen from direct light.
herb	: any plant with leaves, seeds, or flowers used for flavoring, food, medicine, or perfume.
sandstorm	: a strong wind carrying sand with it, especially in a desert.
protect	: to keep safe from harm or injury.
tamarisk	: small trees that have tiny leaves of small, white to pink flowers.
palm tree	: a tree that gives out dates.

acacia	: a kind of tree or bush that grows in very warm climates and have tiny leaves and are covered in spikes.
basil	: an aromatic herb of the mint family.
spearmint	: mint, used as a herb and to flavor candy, chewing gum, etc.

◆ How is an oasis formed?

- ① Rain falls to the ground.
- ② The rain soaks into the earth.
- ③ The rain makes rivers and lakes underground.
- ④ Water comes up to the surface of the ground in a spring.
- ⑤ As oasis is a place where there is a big spring or lots of springs.



Siwa Oasis is a very interesting place in the desert. People have lived here for thousands of years. The desert is hot and dry, but in an oasis there is water. People can grow trees and plants, and look after animals. I've visited Siwa Oasis with my family. We ate lots of fruit, we saw some monuments and we swam in the spring.

There are many different plants and trees at an oasis. They make the oasis a special place. The desert is hot, and the trees and plants give people food, medicine, and shade.



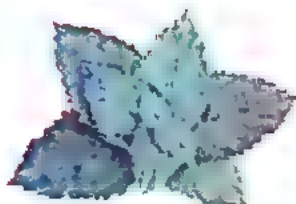
Farmers grow tall date palm trees. They can sell dates in Egypt and all over the world. People also use the leaves of date palm trees to make baskets.

Olive trees grow here as well. People eat olives, cook with olives, and make olive oil. Olives are very good for you. The wood from the olive tree is hard, and we can make useful things from it such as bowls and spoons.



Acacia trees are old and very special. They provide shelter for people and animals. They protect the oasis from sandstorms.

Tamarisk trees also protect the oasis from sandstorms. They are smaller than acacia trees and they have pretty pink flowers.



People can grow spearmint in an oasis. This is a herb. It can be a medicine, or you can put it in food or drink.

Basil is another herb. It is very good for you. It has lots of vitamins and minerals in it, and you can make medicine from its oil. It's delicious in food, too!



~~~~~

## B Structures

### Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

| Affirmative الـإيجاب | Negative النفي       | Interrogative الاستفهام |
|----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| I } have lived       | I } haven't lived    | Have { I lived...?      |
| He } has lived       | He } hasn't lived    | Has { he lived .. ?     |
| She } has lived      | She } hasn't lived   | Has { she lived .. ?    |
| It } has lived       | It } hasn't lived    | Has { it lived...?      |
| You } have lived     | You } haven't lived  | Have { you lived .. ?   |
| We } have lived      | We } haven't lived   | Have { we lived .. ?    |
| They } have lived    | They } haven't lived | Have { they lived..?    |

(has – have) + p.p التصريف الثالث

- She has climbed a tree.- They have seen a big lake.

★ We use it to talk about experience.

★ يستخدم عند الحديث عن الخبرات السابقة أو عند الحديث عن حدث ماضٍ مازال له تأثير حتى الآن.

★ I have never tried coffee.★ We have walked in a desert.

★ In the interrogative form, we use ( has – have ) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the past participle.

★ عند عمل سؤال على المضارع التام ، نبدأ السؤال بـ ( have – has ) أو نضع إحداهما بعد أداة الاستفهام مع التصريف الثالث.

★ What have you done?

✎ I have walked in the park.

★ Have you ever visited Siwa?

✎ Yes, I have.

★ Have you ever seen a snake?

✎ No, I haven't.

★ Have you ever climbed a mountain✎ No. I have never climbed a mountain.

## Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Shaza : Have you ever visited Siwa?

Jana : ..... Is it a special place?

Shaza : .....

Shaza : What interesting things can we see there?

Shaza : .....



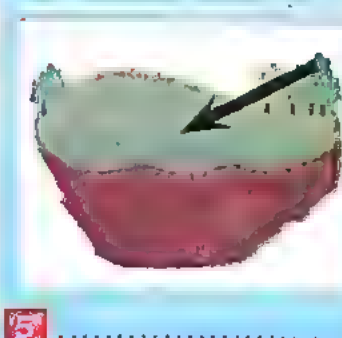
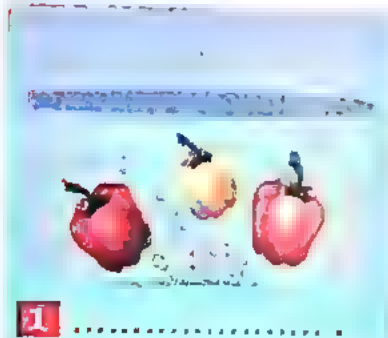
2 Complete using the following words:

shade – medicine – food – baskets – protection

At an oasis, there are lots of springs of fresh water. Trees and plants can grow, and we can use these in different ways. We can grow (1) ..... to eat. We can take shelter from the sun in their (2) ..... . We can make (3) ..... for people who are sick. We can make (4) ..... from the leaves of trees and plants. The trees also give us (5) ..... from storms in the desert. An oasis is a very special place!

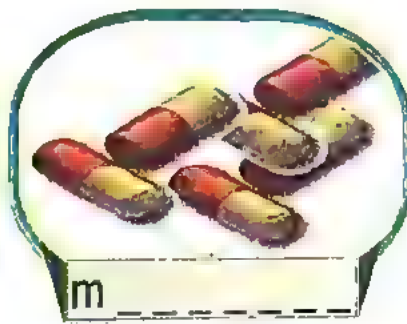
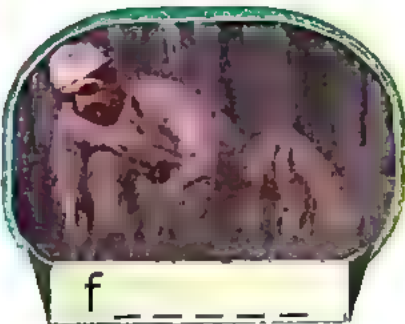
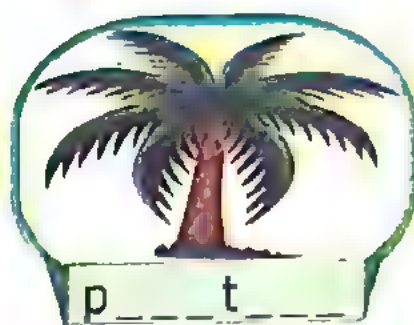
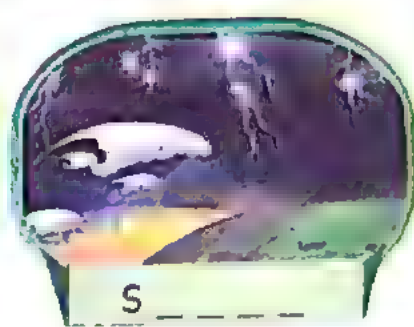
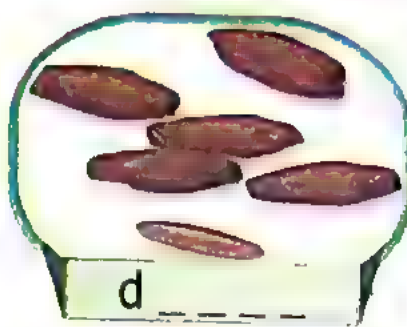
3 Write the correct word under each picture:

spring – surface – underground river – herb – oasis – soak



4 Supply the missing letters:





### Choose the correct word(s): Vocabulary

- ① The (mountain – oasis – ground) is a place in the desert where there's water.
- ② We can get water to drink at the (sea – winter – spring) over there.
- ③ Spearmint and basil are different (dates – herbs – fruit).
- ④ Don't go out when there's a (sun – light – sandstorm).
- ⑤ (Deserts – Lakes – Rivers) are very hot and dry.
- ⑥ Doctors give (medicine – plants – dates) to sick people.
- ⑦ We can get fresh water in (seas – rivers – oceans).
- ⑧ There are lots of dates in the (acacia – tamarisk – palm) tree.
- ⑨ The (farmer – doctor – teacher) grows plants and keeps animals.
- ⑩ We can sit in the (leaves – shade – wood) of a tree when it's hot.



# Choose the correct word(s): Structures

- ① He (has – have) ridden his bike.
- ② I (has – have) done my homework.
- ③ We (has – have) watched a movie.
- ④ Mona (has – have) helped her mum.
- ⑤ They (has – have) gone to Alexandria.
- ⑥ The cat (has – have) eaten its food.
- ⑦ You (has – have) helped me a lot. Thank you.
- ⑧ I have (visiting – visit – visited) an oasis with my family three times.
- ⑨ We have (see – saw – seen) a big lake.
- ⑩ (Has – Have – Did) you ever climbed a tree?
- ⑪ I've (ever – never – already) eaten basil. I don't know it.
- ⑫ Have you ever (swum – swim – swam) in a lake?
- ⑬ They've (took – taken – take) lots of photos.
- ⑭ People (lives – are living – have lived) there for thousands of years.
- ⑮ Have you (ever – never – since) tried coffee?
- ⑯ Have you ever visited Siwa? - No, I (have – hasn't – haven't).

## Read the passage and answer the questions:

There are many different plants and trees at an oasis. They make the oasis a special place. The desert is hot, and the trees and plants give people food, medicine, and shade.

Farmers grow tall date palm trees. They can sell dates in Egypt and all over the world. People also use the leaves of date palm trees to make baskets.

Olive trees grow here as well. People eat olives, cook with olives, and make olive oil. Olives are very good for you. The wood from the olive tree is hard, and we can make useful things from it such as bowls and spoons.

Acacia trees are old and very special. They provide shelter for people and animals. They protect the oasis from sandstorms.

Tamarisk trees also protect the oasis from sandstorms. They are smaller than acacia trees and they have pretty pink flowers.

People can grow spearmint in an oasis. This is a herb. It can be a medicine, or you can put it in food or drink.

Basil is another herb. It is very good for you. It has lots of vitamins and minerals in it, and you can make medicine from its oil. It's delicious in food, too!

## A Answer the following questions:

- 1 What do people use the leaves of palm trees for?
- 2 What protects the oasis from sandstorms?

## B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 Trees give us (shade – baskets – bowls).
- 4 (Acacia – Tamarisk – Basil) has lots of vitamins.

## C Match:

'A'

'B'

- |                  |                                                         |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 olive tree     | a) you can put this herb in food or drink.              |
| 2 acacia tree    | b) these small trees protect the oasis from sandstorms. |
| 3 date palm tree | c) you can get hard wood from this tree.                |
| 4 spearmint      | d) you can make baskets with the leaves of this tree.   |
| 5 tamarisk       | e) this herb has vitamins and minerals in it.           |
| 6 basil          | f) this special tree gives lots of shade.               |

## S Write a paragraph of four sentences on:

"Siwa Oasis"

## Ideas to help you:

interesting – desert – water – plants – animals – dates – monuments





**9 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:**

- 1** No, I've never seen a snake. (Have)  
✍ .....  
✍ .....
- 2** He took lots of sandwiches. (taken)  
✍ .....  
✍ .....
- 3** Have you ever climbed a mountain. (No, ....)  
✍ .....  
✍ .....
- 4** They saw lots of interesting places. (seen)  
✍ .....  
✍ .....
- 5** Yes, I've tried Siwan food. (Have)  
✍ .....  
✍ .....
- 6** She swam in the swimming pool. (has)  
✍ .....  
✍ .....
- 7** Have you ever visited Luxor and Aswan? (Yes, ....)  
✍ .....  
✍ .....
- 8** I gave my mum a present. (have)  
✍ .....  
✍ .....

**10 Copy the following sentence:**

✍ One hour today is worth two tomorrow.

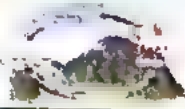
\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



## Vocabulary

water cycle



دورة المياه

runoff



جريان المياه

condense



يتكثف

drops of water



قطرات الماء

condensation



تكثيف

liquid water



ماء سائل

evaporation



تبخير

fresh water



ماء عذب

vapor



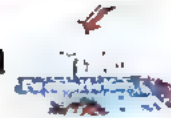
بخار

salt water



ماء مالح

precipitation



هطول الأمطار

sea



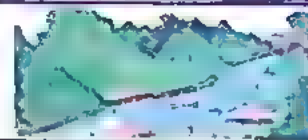
بحر

process



عملية

river



نهر

atmosphere



غلاف جوي

ocean



محيط

air



هواء

groundwater



مياه جوفية

join together



تلتحم مع بعضها

heat (n) (v)



حرارة - يسخن

clouds



سحب

rise up



ترتفع

wind



رياح

cool (v)




يبرد



|                                                                                                   |                   |                                                                                                 |                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| stages           | مراحل             | get bigger   | تتغير                 |
| different types  | أنماط مختلفة      | get heavier                                                                                     | تصبح أثقل             |
| sky              | السماء            | get deeper   | تصبح أعمق             |
| rain (n)         | مطر               | get wider    | تصبح أوسع             |
| snow             | جليد              | get cooler   | تبرد                  |
| hail             | برد<br>(ثلج خفيف) | flow         | يتدفق                 |
| hill            | تل                | land (v)     | تهبط (تنزل على الأرض) |
| high ground    | أرض عالية         | become     | تصبح                  |
| experiment     | تجربة             | cause (v)  | يسبب                  |
| science class  | حصة علوم          | start      | تبدأ                  |
| beaker         | كأس               | move        | تحرك                  |
| empty          | فارغ              | run down    | تجري لأسفل            |
| narrow         | ضيق               | come back  | تعود - ترجع           |
| ice            | ثلج               | travel     | تنتقل                 |



|                 |                                                                                   |             |               |                                                                                     |             |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| The Dead Sea    |  | البحر الميت | float         |   | تطفو        |
| surrounded by   |  | محاط بـ     | frozen water  |                                                                                     | ماء متجمد   |
| is squeezed out |  | تضغط للخارج | freeze (v)    |  | يتلج (يجمد) |
| is formed       |  | تكون - تشكل | polar regions |   | أماكن قطبية |
| salty           |  | مالح        | melt          |   | يسيح (يصهر) |

## Vocabulary Study

|               |                                                                                                    |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| water cycle   | : cycle that involves the continuous circulation of water in the Earth-atmosphere system.          |
| condensation  | : water which collects as droplets on a cold surface when humid air is in contact with it.         |
| evaporation   | : the process of turning from liquid into vapor.                                                   |
| vapor         | : when water turns into a gas form.                                                                |
| process       | : a series of actions or steps taken in order to achieve a particular end.                         |
| precipitation | : water that falls from clouds.                                                                    |
| atmosphere    | : the whole mass of air surrounding the earth.                                                     |
| run off       | : running water from the surface of an area of land.                                               |
| fresh water   | : water that you can drink, as water of rivers, ponds, or lakes, that is not salty.                |
| salt water    | : water from the sea, which has salt in it.                                                        |
| groundwater   | : water held underground that can be brought to the surface through natural springs or by pumping. |





|                      |                                                                                                      |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>rise up</b>       | : to come to the surface.                                                                            |
| <b>hail</b>          | : a form of solid, small balls usually consisting of layers of ice and snow that falls from the sky. |
| <b>experiment</b>    | : an act or operation for the purpose of discovering something unknown or of testing something.      |
| <b>empty</b>         | : containing nothing; not filled.                                                                    |
| <b>flow (v)</b>      | : when water move or run smoothly.                                                                   |
| <b>float</b>         | : to stay on the surface of a liquid without sinking.                                                |
| <b>squeeze</b>       | : when you squeeze something, you put pressure on it.                                                |
| <b>polar regions</b> | : area around the North Pole or the South Pole.                                                      |
| <b>melt (v)</b>      | : make or become liquefied by warmth or heat.                                                        |

## The water cycle

Where does water come from? Water travels from the land to the sea, in a process called the **Water Cycle**. These are the stages.

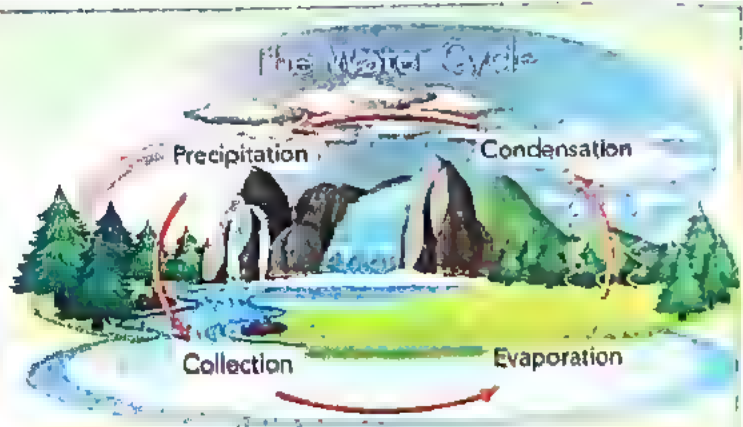
**Evaporation** Let's start on the ground. Heat from the sun makes water in the sea, in lakes, and in rivers start to evaporate. The water turns into vapor. This vapor rises up into the atmosphere.

**Condensation** As the air rises, it starts to cool. This makes the water vapor condenses into drops of water. These join together to make clouds.

**Precipitation** Wind moves the clouds in the sky. The clouds get bigger and heavier. Precipitation is when water falls from the clouds as rain, snow, or hail.

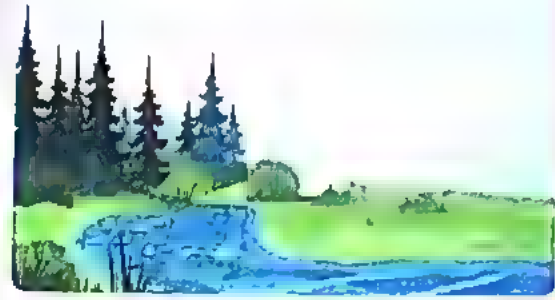
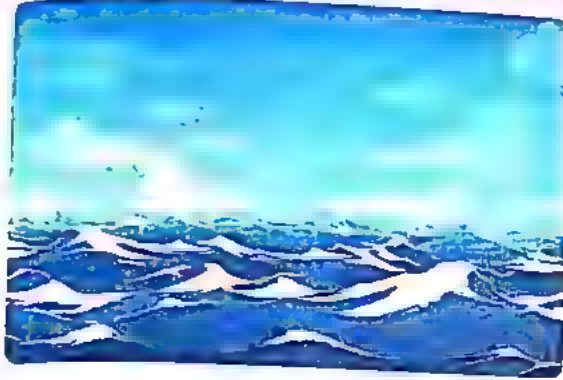
When rain falls on high ground, it runs down mountains and hills as rivers. This is **runoff**. The rivers start small and narrow. They get deeper and wider as they gather more water. Rivers run to the sea, and the cycle starts again with evaporation.

Some water soaks into the ground. This is **groundwater**. It flows into underground rivers and lakes. These can come back to the surface as a spring. A spring can become a river or a lake. The water evaporates, and the cycle starts again.





## Rivers, Seas, and Oceans



There are two types of liquid water- fresh water and salt water. Rivers and lakes have fresh water in them. The water comes from precipitation and springs.

Seas and oceans have salt water in them, because rain washes minerals from the land and from rocks. These minerals go into the sea in runoff water.

Rivers don't have salt water because the rain keeps fresh water moving through.

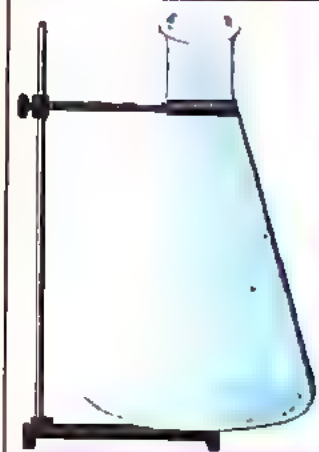
~~~~~



We've done an experiment in our science class. We put salt water in one beaker, and fresh water in another beaker. We heated the water in the beakers. Look what has happened!



The water has evaporated and we can see the salt.

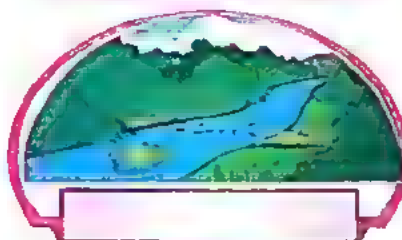
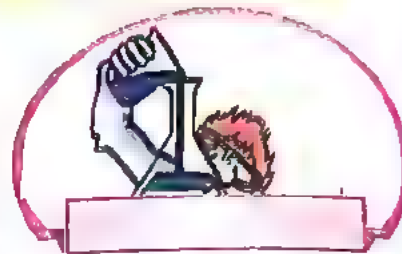
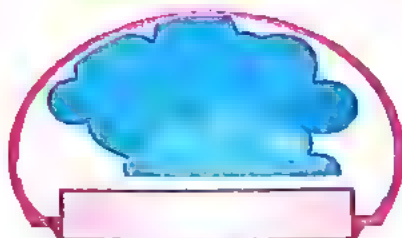


The water has evaporated. The beaker is empty.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Write the correct word under each picture:

experiment – heat – evaporation – sea – cloud –
condensation – river – wind – float



2 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Where does water come from? Water travels from the land to the sea, in a process called the Water Cycle.

These are the stages.

Let's start on the ground. Heat from the sun makes water in the sea, in lakes, and in rivers start to evaporate. The water turns into vapor. This vapor rises up into the atmosphere. This is called evaporation.

As the air rises, it starts to cool. This makes the water vapor condenses into drops of water. These join together to make clouds. This is called condensation.

Wind moves the clouds in the sky. The clouds get bigger and heavier. Precipitation is when water falls from the clouds as rain, snow, or hail.

When rain falls on high ground, it runs down mountains and hills as rivers. This is runoff. The rivers start small and narrow.

They get deeper and wider as they gather more water. Rivers run to the sea, and the cycle starts again with evaporation.

Some water soaks into the ground. This is groundwater. It flows into underground rivers and lakes. These can come back to the surface as a spring. A spring can become a river or a lake. The water

A // "Answer the following questions:

- ① What does heat from the sun do to water?
- ② What's precipitation?

B // "Choose the correct answer:

- ③ Vapor (**falls down – rises up – stops**) into the atmosphere.
- ④ (**Groundwater – Frozen water – Salt water**) is water that soaks into the ground.

C // "Complete the sentences form the passage:

- ① is when water falls from clouds as rain.
- ② Water that lands on the ground and travels in rivers is called
- ③ Some water soaks into the ground as
- ④ The sun causes of water from the surface of rivers and the sea.
- ⑤ happens as water vapor rises and gets cooler.
- ⑥ The whole process is called

D Match "A" with "B":

'A'	'B'
① evaporation	a) Water falls from the clouds as rain, snow or hail.
② condensation	b) Some water soaks into the ground and flows in rivers that are under the ground.
③ precipitation	c) Water vapor rises and starts to cool. It becomes clouds.
④ runoff	d) How water in rivers becomes clouds, then rainfall, then runoff, then rivers that are under the ground.
⑤ groundwater	e) The sun turns water into vapor. Vapor rises into the atmosphere.
⑥ cycle	f) When rain falls on high ground, it runs down mountains as rivers.

**Complete using the following words:****deeper – rivers – sea – small**

Runoff starts as small , narrow on mountains and high ground. The rivers get and wider and then they run into the

cycle – lake – surface – ground

Groundwater flows in rivers and lakes under the This water comes back to the as a spring. A spring can become a river or a The water evaporates and the starts again.

Read the water facts then answer:

- ① The Dead Sea is a small sea, and it is surrounded by land. The water here has a lot of salt in it. Because of the salt, you can float in the Dead Sea!
- ② The water in an oasis is fresh. It comes from underground lakes and rivers.
- ③ Ice is frozen water. In polar regions, when ice is formed from salt water, the salt is squeezed out and only the water freezes. This means the ice isn't salty – you can melt the water and drink it!

Circle T (true) or F (false):

- | | |
|--|-------|
| ① The Dead Sea doesn't have much salt in it. | T / F |
| ② You can float in the Dead Sea. | T / F |
| ③ The water in an oasis comes from precipitation. | T / F |
| ④ When ice is formed with salt water, it becomes more salty. | T / F |
| ⑤ In polar regions, you can melt ice and drink it. | T / F |

Copy the following sentence:

 Doing is better than saying.

Vocabulary

cactus



نبات الصبار

thick skin



جلد سميك

camel



جمل

thick fur



فرو سميك

hooves



حوافر

roots



جذور

hump



سنام الجمل

camouflage



تمويه - خداع

spines



شوك

temperate zone



منطقة معتدلة

hollow tube



أنبوبة مفرغة

tropical zone



منطقة استوائية

habitat



موطن

polar zone



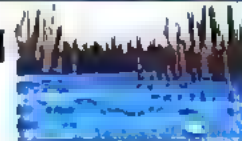
منطقة قطبية

adapt to



يتكيف مع

wetland

أرض مبللة
(مائية)

survive

يبقى على
قيد الحياة

wet



مبتل

behave

يسلك -
يتصرف

dry



جاف

desert




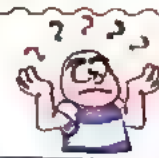







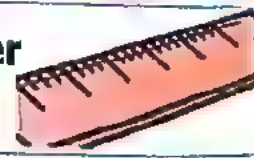

صحراء

rainwater



مياه الأمطار

catch		يمسك	fat		دهن
hold		يمسك	nutrients		مواد مغذية
store		يخزن	wide		واسع
stem		جذع - ساق النبات	swamp		مستنقع
last	last	يستمر	keep warm		يحافظ عليه دافئ
sweat		يعرق	stay cool		يظل باردًا (رطبًا)
lose		يفقد - يخسر	deep		عميق

season		فصل - موسم	problem		مشكلة
fall		الخريف	measure		يقيس
spring		الربيع	amount		كمية
summer		الصيف	per year		في العام
winter		الشتاء	millimeter (mm)		مليمتر
equator		خط الاستواء	hundred	100	مائة

NNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNN

the “ə” sounds:

Prepositions

Step Ahead Series

Vocabulary Study

cactus	: a plant with a thick stem that has spines, cacti plants can survive in hard conditions and lack of water.
hooves	: the horny parts of the feet of an animal, like a camel.
hump	: a rounded thing found on the back of a camel.
spines	: spikes on the stem of a plant.
hollow	: having a hole or empty space inside.
tube	: a long, hollow cylinder for holding or transporting something, like liquids or gases.
adapt	: to make (something) suitable for a new use or purpose
survive	: to continue to live or exist, especially in spite of danger or hardship.
behave	: act or conduct oneself in a specified way, especially toward others.
thick	: not thin.
skin	: the outer layer of an animal body.
fur	: the short, fine, soft hair of certain animals.
camouflage	: hiding or disguising.
temperate zone	: areas that have a climate that is warm in the summer, cold in the winter, and moderate in the spring and fall.
tropical zone	: areas that have a climate that is hot all the year round and there is heavy rain for six months and there is less rain for six months.
polar zone	: areas in the North or South Pole.
stem	: the main body of a plant.
store	: to keep (something) for future use.
last	: to continue.

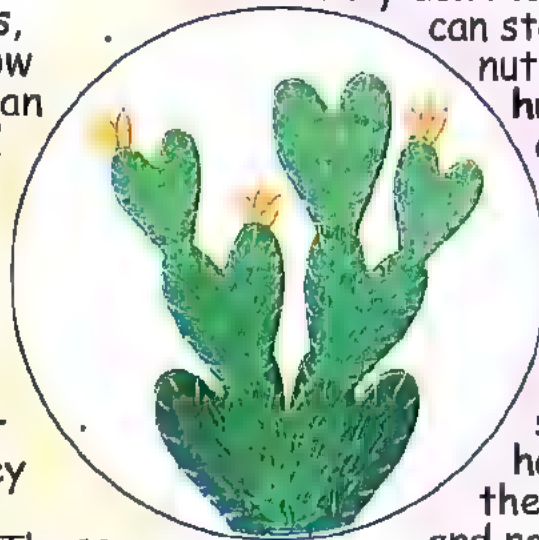


Plants and animals

Plants and animals adapt to their habitat. This means that they change the way they behave in order to survive in their habitat. We know that plants need water to grow, and animals need to drink to live. But some plants and animals live in the desert. How?

Cactus plants have adapted to survive in the desert! Their roots are close to the surface and they spread out a long way in the ground. They can catch a lot of rainwater when it doesn't rain.

Inside a cactus, there are hollow tubes. These can hold water and store it for many years. A cactus plant has thick skin so water inside the tubes can't evaporate. They have spines to protect them. These stop animals drinking the water inside the cactus.



Camels have adapted to survive very well in the desert. They can drink enough water to last for a week. They don't often sweat, so they don't lose water. They can store fat and nutrients in their hump, so they don't have to eat for months. They have wide hooves, so it is easier to walk on sand. They have hair around their eyes, ears and nose to keep the sand out.



The desert is hot in the day, but very cold at night. They have thick, fur to keep them warm at night.

Did you know?

Some countries have four seasons: spring, summer, fall, and winter. It might rain a lot in fall and winter, and not as much in spring and summer.

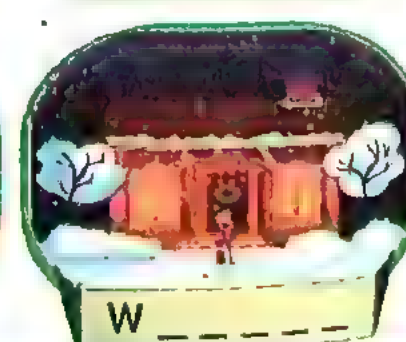
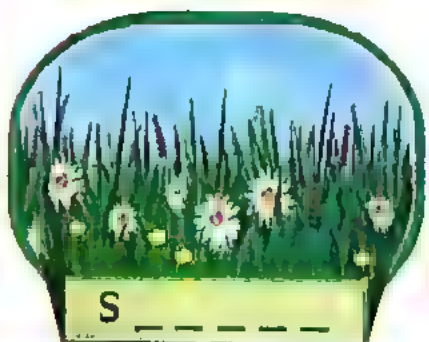
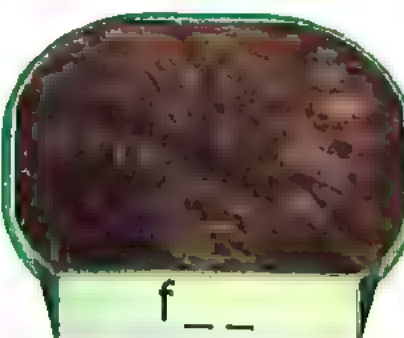
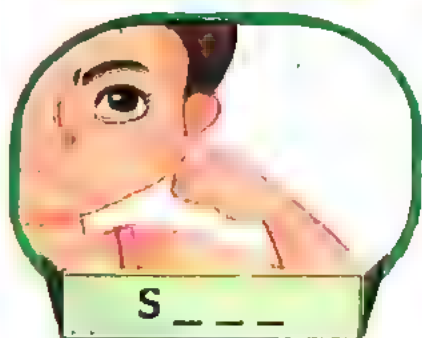
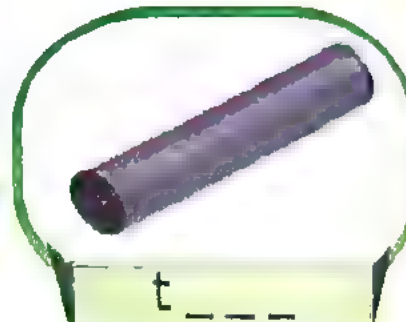
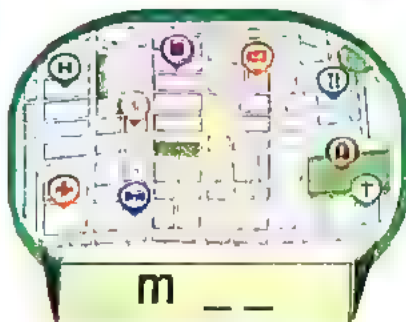
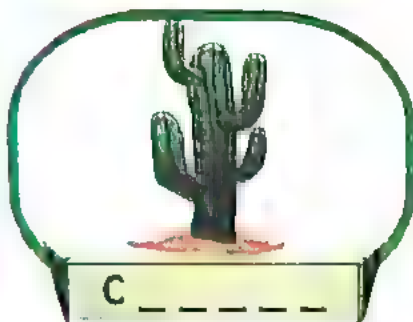
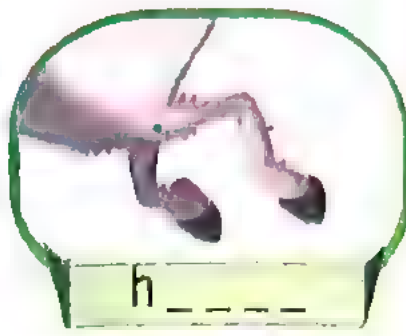
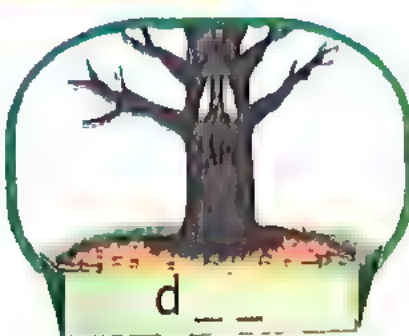
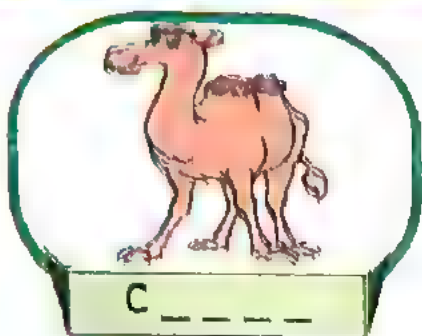
These are countries further away from the equator, in the temperate zones.

Some countries have two seasons - the wet season and the dry season.

These are countries closer to the equator, in tropical zones. It rains a lot for six months, then there is less rain for six months.

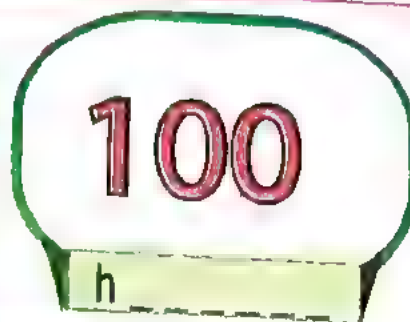
Exercises on Lesson 3

Supply the missing letters





f



h



t

Match 'A' with 'B'

'A'	'B'
① desert	a) There is a lot of rain here for most of the year.
② tropical zone	b) There is water on the ground here.
③ wetland	c) The water here is ice.
④ Polar zone	d) There is a lot of rain in fall and winter. There is less in spring and summer.
⑤ temperate zone	e) It doesn't often rain here.

Read the passage and answer the questions:

Plants and animals adapt to their habitat. This means that they change the way they behave in order to survive in their habitat. We know that plants need water to grow, and animals need to drink to live. But some plants and animals live in the desert. How?

Cactus plants have adapted to survive in the desert! Their roots are close to the surface and they spread out a long way in the ground. They can catch a lot of rainwater when it doesn't rain.

Inside a cactus, there are hollow tubes. These can hold water and store it for many years. A cactus plant has thick skin so the water inside the tubes can't evaporate. They have spines to protect them. These stop animals drinking the water inside the cactus.

Camels have adapted to survive very well in the desert. They can drink enough water to last for a week. They don't often sweat, so they don't lose water. They can store fat and nutrients in their hump, so they don't have to eat for months.

They have wide hooves, so it is easier to walk on sand. They have hair around their eyes, ears and nose to keep the sand out.

The desert is hot in the day, but very cold at night. They have thick, fur to keep them warm at night.

A Answer the following questions:

- 1 How do plants and animals adapt to their habitat?
- 2 What do plants and animals need water to?

B Write T (True) or F (False):

- 1 The roots of a cactus are deep in the ground. ☐
- 2 A cactus can hold water for years. ☐
- 3 The spines of a cactus help animals find water. ☐
- 4 Camels sweat a lot to stay cool. ☐
- 5 A camel's hump can store fat and nutrients. ☐
- 6 A camel has wide hooves to keep it warm at night. ☐

1 Circle the word with the (a) sound:

- | | | |
|-----------|---------|--------|
| 1 sea | acacia | coffee |
| 2 cheetah | try | buy |
| 3 through | statue | under |
| 4 ride | shelter | night |
| 5 mommy | happy | doctor |


1 Say the following numbers:**Remember!**

We say 352 three hundred and fifty-two
 3522 three thousand, five hundred and twenty-two

Say these numbers:

4,480 - 421 - 508 - 2,340 - 9,087 - 635 - 8,793 - 176

1 Copy the following sentence:

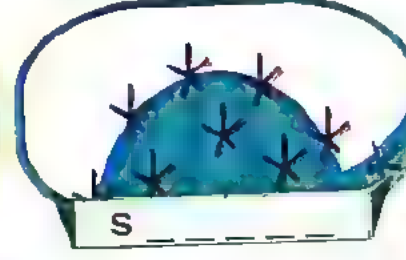
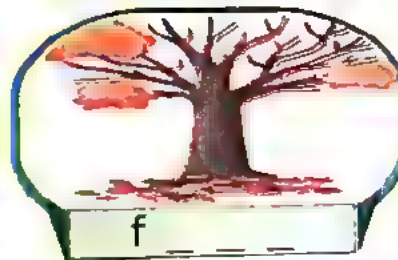
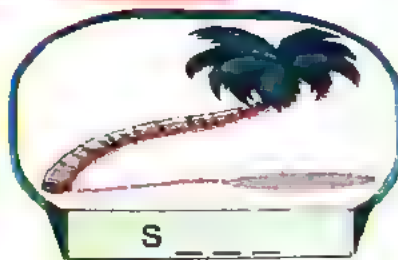
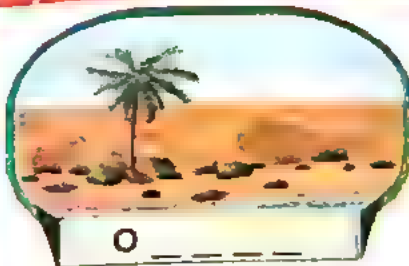
 Sooner begun, sooner done.



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: (2Ms)

- Ashraf :
 Walid : No, I have never climbed a mountain.
 Ashraf : Do you like to climb a mountain one day?
 Walid :

2 Supply the missing letters: (6Ms)



3 Choose the correct word in brackets: (8Ms)

- ① (Has – Have – Are) you ever cooked for your family?
- ② We can get fresh water in the (sea – ocean – river).
- ③ People have (live – lives – lived) there for thousands of years.
- ④ Water vapor (condenses – evaporates – flows) into drops of water.
- ⑤ I've (ever – never – already) ridden a camel. I'm afraid of them.
- ⑥ All animals need (surface – beaker – shelter) for protection and keeping safe.
- ⑦ She's (eat – eaten – ate) all her sandwiches.
- ⑧ Water comes up to the surface of the ground in a (cloud – precipitation – spring).

4 Rewrite the following sentences doing as shown: (4Ms)

- ① Yes, I have eaten dates.

(Have)



- ② He saw lots of beautiful birds.

(seen)



- 3 Have you ever planted a tree? (No,...)
 4 She gave me her pen. (has)

Read the following passage and answer the questions below: (4Ms)

The weather in Egypt is usually sunny. But in summer. It's very hot. So we usually go to Alexandria. In winter, it's cold and it sometimes rains. We sometimes go to Luxor and Aswan in winter. I like spring. The weather is windy and nice in spring.

A Answer the following questions:

- 1 What's the weather like in summer?
 2 Is it wet in winter?

B Choose the correct answer:

- 1 It's (hot – cold – windy) in spring.
 2 The weather in Egypt is (cloudy – snowy – sunny).

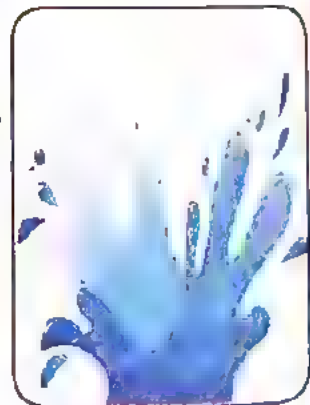
Write a paragraph of four sentences on: (4Ms)

"How is water very important"

Ideas to help you:

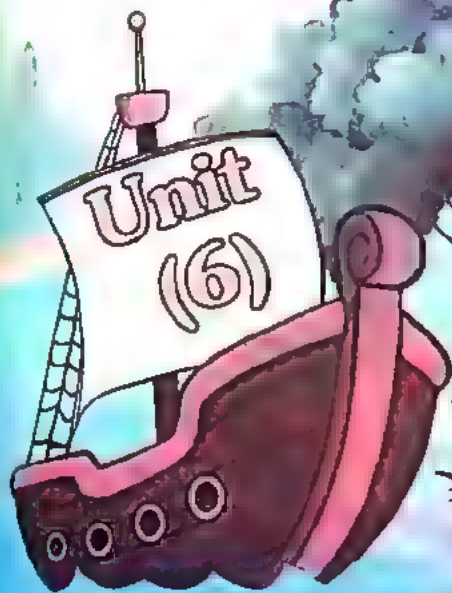
humans animals plants

.....



Copy the following sentence:









Never put off until tomorrow what you can do today.





LESSON 1 Pages 76-77

Vocabulary

flood		طوفان - فيضان	drain		بالوعة (بلاعة)
dam		سد	pipe		أنبوية
barrier		حاجز	canal		قناة مائية
pump (n)		مضخة	sandbag		أكياس رمل

NNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNN

thunderstorms		عواصف رعدية	airport		ميناء جوي
lightning		برق	port		ميناء بحري
rain		مطر	streets		شوارع
ground		ارض	other places		اماكن أخرى
build		يبنى	closed (adj)		مغلق
building		مبنى	stop water		يوقف المياه
move		تتحرك	as well as		علاوة على
use		يستخدم - يستعمل	so		لذلك
river		نهر	where they need it		حيث يحتاجونها



Prepositions

on the surface	على السطح	go down	تنزل
keep water out	يبعد الماء	in front of	أمام
take out	يخرج	under	تحت
put up	يقيم - ينصب	above	أعلى - فوق

~~~~~

## Vocabulary Study

|               |                                                                                                              |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| flood (n)     | : the overflowing of a large amount of water of normally dry areas, often after heavy rains.                 |
| barrier       | : a fence or other obstacle that prevents the movement of water.                                             |
| dam           | : a barrier preventing the flow of water or of loose solid materials.                                        |
| pump (n)      | : a device that raises, transfers liquids or that attenuates gases especially by suction or pressure or both |
| pipe          | : a tube of metal, plastic, or other material used to carry water.                                           |
| drain         | : a pipe carrying off surplus liquid, especially rainwater or liquid waste.                                  |
| canal         | : an artificial waterway for navigation or for draining or irrigating land.                                  |
| sandbag       | : a bag filled with sand.                                                                                    |
| thunderstorms | : a storm with thunder and lightning and typically also heavy rain or hail.                                  |
| lightning     | : a flash of light that is caused by the discharge of electricity in the atmosphere.                         |
| airport       | : a place where planes land and take off.                                                                    |
| port          | : a place where boats come and go.                                                                           |
| closed (adj)  | : not open.                                                                                                  |
| surface       | : the outside part or uppermost layer of something.                                                          |

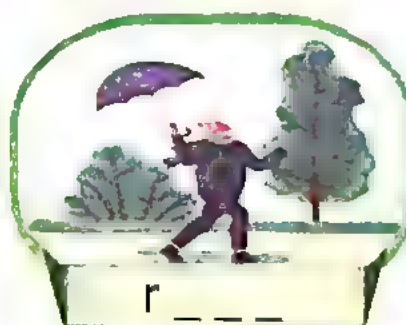
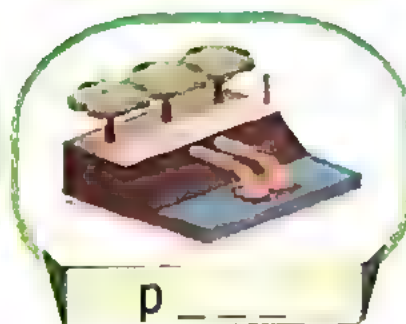
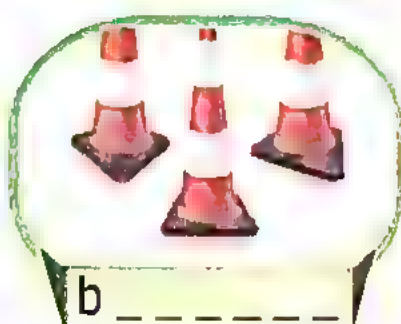
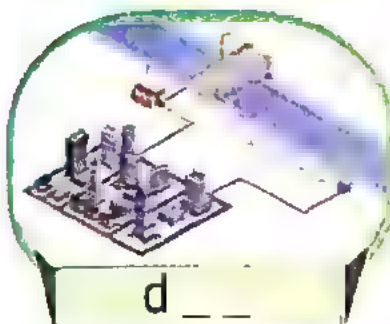
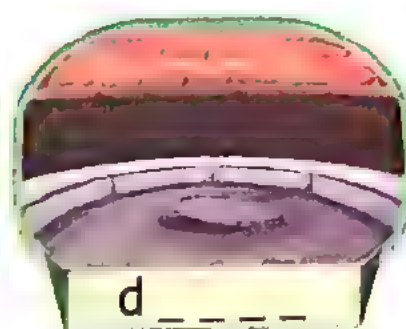




In 2020, there was a flood in Egypt. There was a lot of rain, as well as thunderstorms and lightning. The airport in Luxor and the ports in Alexandria and Sharm el-Sheikh were closed.

Yes, that's right. A lot of rain fell in a very short time. There was too much water, and the streets and buildings in Cairo and other places flooded.

## 1 Supply the missing letters.



## 2 Choose the correct word(s): Structures

- ① There was a (thunderstorm – flood) in Egypt. Water filled all streets and roads.



- ② A (dam – drain) stops water in a river.
- ③ Water on the surface of streets can go down a (drain – barrier).
- ④ You can use a (dam – pump) to take water out of a building in a flood.
- ⑤ Water moves in (pipes – sandbags) under the ground or above the ground
- ⑥ A (pump – canal) is a river that people build, so they can move water to where they need it.
- ⑦ In a flood, people can put up a (pipe – barrier) to stop water in the street.
- ⑧ People put (sandbags – canals) in front of houses and buildings to keep water out

### 3 Read the following passage and answer the questions:

In 2020, there was a flood in Egypt. There was a lot of rain, as well as thunderstorms and lightning. The airport in Luxor and the ports in Alexandria and Sharm el-Sheikh were closed. A lot of rain fell in a very short time. There was too much water, and the streets and buildings in Cairo and other places flooded.

### A Answer the following questions:

- 1 What happened in Egypt in 2020?
- 2 Why were the ports in Alexandria closed?

### B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 The airport in Luxor was (open – narrow – closed).
- 4 The streets and buildings in (Cairo – Alexandria – Sharm el-Sheikh) flooded.

### 4 Copy the following sentence:

 Honesty is the best policy.

---



---

## A Vocabulary

~~~~~  
NNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNNN

Step Ahead Series

prepare		يُستعد - يجهز	clear		خالية من الشوائب
find ways		يجدوا طرق	more		أكثر
study		يُدرس	less		أقل
start		يبدأ	smaller		أصغر
send		يُبعث - يرسل	cup		فنجان
get		يُحصل على	pencil		قلم رصاص
remove		يُزيل	ruler		مسطرة
make		تُجعل	paper		ورق
something bad		شيء ما سيء	what might happen		ما يمكن أن يحدث

~~~~~

### Prepositions

|                   |              |                |              |
|-------------------|--------------|----------------|--------------|
| in the future     | في المستقبل  | fall down      | تسقط         |
| in a short time   | في وقت قصير  | carry ... away | يجرف         |
| in good condition | في حالة جيدة | move away      | تتحرك بعيداً |
| put something in  | يُركب        | such as        | مثل          |



## Vocabulary Study

|                       |                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>collapse</b>       | : to fall down.                                                                                        |
| <b>ruin (v)</b>       | : to damage or destroy something.                                                                      |
| <b>wash away</b>      | : to carry something away with water.                                                                  |
| <b>damage</b>         | : to do harm.                                                                                          |
| <b>destroy</b>        | : to put an end to the existence of (something).                                                       |
| <b>minimize</b>       | : to make something smaller or less.                                                                   |
| <b>predict</b>        | : to say what might happen in the future.                                                              |
| <b>protect</b>        | : to keep something safe.                                                                              |
| <b>warn</b>           | : to tell people that something bad will happen, so they can prepare.                                  |
| <b>warning</b>        | : something which is said or written to tell people of a possible danger, problem, that might happen,  |
| <b>install</b>        | : to put something in.                                                                                 |
| <b>effect (n)</b>     | : a change which is a result or consequence of an action or other cause.                               |
| <b>positive</b>       | : means focused on what is good.                                                                       |
| <b>negative</b>       | : means focused on what is bad.                                                                        |
| <b>meteorologist</b>  | : a person who studies the weather.                                                                    |
| <b>scientist</b>      | : a person who is studying or has expert knowledge of one or more of the natural or physical sciences. |
| <b>problems</b>       | : a matter or situation regarded as unwelcome or harmful.                                              |
| <b>technology</b>     | : the application of scientific knowledge for practical purposes, especially in industry.              |
| <b>engineer</b>       | : a person who designs, builds, or maintains engines, machines, or public works.                       |
| <b>risk</b>           | : a situation involving possibility to danger.                                                         |
| <b>keep .... safe</b> | : to protect or take care of something.                                                                |





When there are floods, there can be big problems. Flood water can ruin homes, shops, and offices. It can **wash away** roads or make bridges and homes **collapse**. It's important for engineers and scientists to find ways to protect everyone from floods.

Meteorologists are people who study the weather. They watch what is happening and predict when floods will start. They can **warn** people to put up barriers or use sandbags to keep their homes safe. They can send these warnings on cell phones, so everyone gets them quickly.

We can **install** new technology such as more powerful pumps to remove the water. We can keep drains clear and in good condition so water can move away quickly.

When it rains a lot in a short time, there is a risk of flooding. If we are prepared for this, we can minimize the dangerous effects of flooding.

## B Structures

تنقسم الأسماء إلى أسماء تعد لها مفرد ولها جمع وأسماء لا تعد دائماً تعامل معاملة المفرد مثل:

### Countable nouns

### أسماء تعد

|        |   |        |
|--------|---|--------|
| cup    | - | pencil |
| ruler  | - | bag    |
| pen    | - | book   |
| road   | - | street |
| bridge | - | office |
| shop   | - | tree   |
| car    | - | school |
| boy    | - | girl   |

### Uncountable nouns

### أسماء لا تعد

|       |   |        |
|-------|---|--------|
| water | - | paper  |
| rice  | - | meat   |
| tea   | - | coffee |
| rain  | - | air    |
| sugar | - | salt   |
| jam   | - | bread  |
| pasta | - | cheese |
| sand  | - | blood  |



too many (أزيد من اللازم)

تُتَع بِإِسْم يَعِد (جمع)

too much (أزيد من اللازم)

تُتَع بِإِسْم لَا يَعِد

enough (كاف)

تُتَع بِإِسْم يَعِد أَوْ لَا يَعِد

- ♦ There **is** too much water in the pot.
- ♦ There **are** too many books in my bag.
- ♦ There **isn't** enough paper on the table.
- ♦ There **aren't** enough cups in the kitchen.

⚡ لاحظ أن الأسماء التي لا تعد دائماً تعامل معاملة المفرد بينما الأسماء التي تعد تعامل معاملة المفرد إن كانت مفرد وتعامل معاملة الجمع إن كانت جمع.

## Exercises on Lesson 2

### 1 Choose the correct word(s): Vocabulary

- ① We can (minimize – collapse) the effects of flooding if we are prepared.
- ② Flood water can (wash away – warn) cars, roads and bridges.
- ③ We need to (predict – install) a pump to remove the water.
- ④ We can (ruin – protect) our streets with barriers.
- ⑤ Flood water can (ruin – install) homes and shops.
- ⑥ Buildings can (collapse – wash away) when there are dangerous floods.

### 2 Choose the correct word(s): Structures

- ① There are too (many – much – enough) pencils in the bag.
- ② There is too (enough – many – much) water in the glass.
- ③ There aren't (too – too much – enough) rulers in the bag.



- ④ There isn't (enough – too many – too) tea in my cup.
- ⑤ There (am – is – are) too many cars in the street.
- ⑥ There (am – is – are) too much cheese in my sandwich.
- ⑦ There (am not – isn't – are not) enough rice in the fridge.
- ⑧ There (am not – isn't – aren't) enough bridges in my town.
- ⑨ There is too (many – much – enough) salt in my food.
- ⑩ There aren't (too much – too – enough) boys to play football.
- ⑪ There are too (many – much – enough) shops in my street.
- ⑫ There isn't (too – enough – too many) sugar in my coffee.
- ⑬ There (am – is – are) enough schools in this town for all children.
- ⑭ There (am – is – are) too much sand on the floor.
- ⑮ There (am – is – are) enough meat to cook lunch.
- ⑯ There (am – is – are) too many girls in this room.

### **B Read the following passage and answer the questions.**

When there are floods, there can be big problems. Flood water can ruin homes, shops, and offices. It can wash away roads or make bridges and homes collapse. It's important for engineers and scientists to find ways to protect everyone from floods.

Meteorologists are people who study the weather. They watch what is happening and predict when floods will start. They can warn people to put up barriers or use sandbags to keep their homes safe. They can send these warnings on cell phones, so everyone gets them quickly.

We can install new technology such as more powerful pumps to remove the water. We can keep drains clear and in good condition so water can move away quickly.

When it rains a lot in a short time, there is a risk of flooding. If we are prepared for this, we can minimize the dangerous effects of flooding.

### A "Answer the following questions:

- ① How are floods big problems to us?
- ② What happens when we are prepared for floods?

### B "Choose the correct answer:

- ③ (Engineers – Meteorologists – Teachers) are people who study the weather.
- ④ We can use powerful (pumps – barriers – dams) to remove the water.

### C "Read again and match:

| 'A'         | 'B'                                                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ① ruin      | a) to say what might happen in the future.                             |
| ② wash away | b) to put something in.                                                |
| ③ collapse  | c) to damage or destroy something.                                     |
| ④ protect   | d) to make something smaller or less                                   |
| ⑤ predict   | e) to keep something safe.                                             |
| ⑥ warn      | f) to carry something away with water.                                 |
| ⑦ install   | g) to fall down.                                                       |
| ⑧ minimize  | h) to tell people that something bad will happen, so they can prepare. |

### 4 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

- ① There is too much water. (Use: glasses of water)  
 ↳ .....
- ② I can't buy the T-shirt with this little money. I need 20 pounds more. (enough)  
 ↳ .....
- ③ We don't have a cup for everyone. (enough)  
 ↳ .....



- 4 They have lots of bread in the kitchen. (too much)  
 5 We have lots of trees in the garden. (too many)  
 6 There is too much coffee. (cups of coffee)  
 7 There isn't a book for every pupil in the class. (enough)  
 8 We don't have much cheese to make sandwiches. (enough)  
 9 Cars filled the streets of the city. (too many)  
 10 Her tea is full of lots of sugar. (too much)

Copy the following sentence:

An early bird catches the worm.





# Lesson 3 Pages 80-81

## Vocabulary

|          |                                                                                     |                  |             |                                                                                      |              |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| bossy    |    | متسلط - دكتاتوري | brave       |    | شجاع         |
| cowardly |    | جبان             | cooperative |   | متعاون       |
| lazy     |    | كسول             | caring      |    | مراعي - مهتم |
| mean     |    | بخيل - سيء       | generous    |   | كريم         |
| moody    |    | متقلب المزاج     | responsible |   | مسئول        |
| selfish  |    | أناني            | wise        |    | حكيم - عاقل  |
| funny    |   | مَرِح - مسلي     | loyal       |  | مخلص         |
| calm     |  | هادئ             | polite      |  | مؤدب         |

~~~~~

severe		قاس	sensible		عاقل
scary		مخيف	pleased		سعيد - مسرور
scared		خائف	sick		مريض
frightening		مخيف	injured		مصاب - مجروح
serious		خطير - جاد	ready		جاهز - مستعد
dangerous		خطير	quickly		بسرعة
different		مختلف	kind		طيب



Unit (6)

volunteer
(n) (v)



متطوع - يتطوع

heavy rainfall



امطار غزيرة

volunteering



تطوع

other people



ناس آخرين

community



مجتمع

though



على الرغم من

police officer



ضابط شرطة

communicator



متصل

firefighter



رجل مطافي

presents



هدايا

interviewer



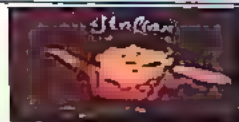
مُحاور

boat



قارب - مركب

citizen



مواطن

situations



مواقف

~~~~~

**describe**



يصف

**focus on**



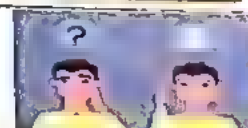
يركز على

**train**



يتدرب

**get to**



يصل إلى

**enjoy**



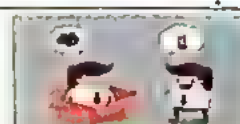
يستمتع بـ

**look after**



يعتني بـ

**think**



أعتقد

**tell jokes**



نقول نكات

**worry**



يفلق

**sharing things**



مشاركة الأشياء

**so**



لذلك

**as well**



ايضا

## Expressions

emergency responder

مستجيب لنداءات الاستغاثة (الطوارئ)

help do their jobs

نساعدهم في أداء مهامهم

do first aid

نقوم بالإسعافات الأولية

travel around the city

نسافر في كل أرجاء المدينة

were stuck in their homes

كانوا محبوسين في منازلهم

without getting paid

بدون الحصول على أجر

make people laugh

يجعل الناس يضحكون

tell people what to do

يقول للناس ما ينبغي عمله

tell her friend's secrets

تفشي أسرار صديقتها

think about himself

يفكر في نفسه

get excited about

تثار أو تتفعل بشأن ....

works very well in a team

يعمل جيدًا في فريق

speaks nicely to everyone

يتكلم بالحسنى إلى كل شخص

behave well

يتصرف بشكل جيد

works very hard

يعمل بجد جدًا



## Vocabulary Study

|                     |                                                                          |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>bossy</b>        | : fond of telling people what to do.                                     |
| <b>cowardly</b>     | : scared in dangerous situations.                                        |
| <b>lazy</b>         | : unwilling to work or use energy.                                       |
| <b>mean</b>         | : unkind.                                                                |
| <b>moody</b>        | : (of a person) given to unpredictable changes of mood.                  |
| <b>selfish</b>      | : thinking only about himself.                                           |
| <b>brave</b>        | : ready to face danger.                                                  |
| <b>cooperative</b>  | : working very well in a team.                                           |
| <b>caring</b>       | : looking after other people.                                            |
| <b>generous</b>     | : helping other people and giving them support especially money.         |
| <b>responsible</b>  | : having control over or care for someone, as part of one's job or role. |
| <b>wise</b>         | : having or showing experience, knowledge, and good judgment.            |
| <b>loyal</b>        | : giving or showing support to a person or institution.                  |
| <b>funny</b>        | : telling lots of jokes and making people laugh.                         |
| <b>calm</b>         | : not getting worried or excited about things.                           |
| <b>polite</b>       | : speaking nicely to everyone and behaving well.                         |
| <b>severe</b>       | : unnecessarily extreme.                                                 |
| <b>scary</b>        | : frightening.                                                           |
| <b>scared</b>       | : frightened.                                                            |
| <b>serious</b>      | : dangerous or firm.                                                     |
| <b>dangerous</b>    | : able or likely to cause harm or injury.                                |
| <b>sensible</b>     | : having, using, or showing good sense or sound judgment.                |
| <b>pleased</b>      | : happy.                                                                 |
| <b>ready</b>        | : completely prepared or in fit condition.                               |
| <b>kind (adj)</b>   | : having or showing a friendly nature.                                   |
| <b>frightening</b>  | : making someone afraid.                                                 |
| <b>volunteer</b>    | : someone who does a job without getting paid.                           |
| <b>community</b>    | : a group of people living in the same place.                            |
| <b>interviewer</b>  | : a person who interviews someone.                                       |
| <b>citizen</b>      | : a member of a state or nation.                                         |
| <b>rainfall</b>     | : the fall of rain.                                                      |
| <b>communicator</b> | : a person who is able to exchange information, news, or ideas.          |
| <b>emergency</b>    | : a serious, unexpected, and often dangerous situation.                  |
| <b>responder</b>    | : a person who reacts quickly or positively to something.                |
| <b>first aid</b>    | : help given to a sick or injured person.                                |
| <b>focus on</b>     | : to pay attention to.                                                   |

Lara is an emergency responder. When there was a severe flood in Cairo in 2020, she was one of the first people to rescue the other citizens from the flood water.



**Interviewer** Can you describe what an emergency responder is?

**Lara** Yes, of course. I volunteer to help my community when there is an emergency. We aren't the police, or firefighters, but we are trained to help them do their jobs. We can get to a place quickly, do first aid, and rescue people from floods.

**Interviewer** Do you enjoy being an emergency responder?

**Lara** Yes, I do. I like helping people and we do lots of different things.

**Interviewer** Is it a scary thing to do?

**Lara** Well, sometimes it is, but then I think that other people will be scared as well, so I focus on how I can help them.

**Interviewer** What did you do when the flood started in Cairo?

**Lara** We knew it might be dangerous when there was very heavy rainfall. So, my team were ready to help people quickly. Our job was to help people who were sick or injured.

**Interviewer** How did you travel around the city?

**Lara** We had small boats, so we could go to different houses and help people who were stuck in their homes.

**Interviewer** Were people pleased to see you?

**Lara** Yes, they were! That's one of the things I love about volunteering – you can make people very happy!

**Interviewer** Thank you, Lara.



## Exercises on Lesson 3

## 1 Write the words in the correct column:

bossy – brave – cowardly – polite – wise – cooperative –  
 lazy – generous – mean – selfish – responsible – caring –  
 moody – loyal

| Negative | Positive |
|----------|----------|
|          |          |
|          |          |
|          |          |
|          |          |

## 2 Circle two correct words of each person:

Sara tells a lot of jokes and makes people laugh, but she also likes telling people what to do! She sometimes tells her friend's secrets to other people.  
**(funny – loyal – bossy)**

Fares often thinks about himself. He doesn't like sharing things. He gets angry quickly.  
**(moody – selfish – mean)**

Nesma doesn't worry or get excited about things. She likes helping other people and she is a good friend. She likes giving people presents.  
**(calm – generous – moody)**

Wael works very well in a team. He speaks nicely to everyone and behaves well. He works very hard.  
**(lazy – polite – cooperative)**

Adam is sensible and can look after other people. He is kind and he isn't scared in dangerous situations.  
**(responsible – cowardly – brave)**

**3 Read the following passage and answer the questions.**

Lara is an emergency responder. When there was a severe flood in Cairo in 2020, she was one of the first people to rescue the other citizens from the flood water.

**Interviewer** Can you describe what an emergency repsonder is?

**Lara** Yes, of course. I volunteer to help my community when there is an emergency. We aren't the police, or firefighters, but we are trained to help them do their jobs. We can get to a place quickly, do first aid, and rescue people from floods.

**Interviewer** Do you enjoy being an emergency responder?

**Lara** Yes, I do. I like helping people and we do lots of different things.

**Interviewer** Is it a scary thing to do?

**Lara** Well, sometimes it is, but then I think that other people will be scared as well, so I focus on how I can help them.

**Interviewer** What did you do when the flood started in Cairo?

**Lara** We knew it might be dangerous when there was very heavy rainfall. So, my team were ready to help people quickly. Our job was to help people who were sick or injured.

**Interviewer** How did you travel around the city?

**Lara** We had small boats, so we could go to different houses and help people who were stuck in their homes.

**Interviewer** Were people pleased to see you?

**Lara** Yes, they were! That's one of the things I love about volunteering – you can make people very happy!

**Interviewer** Thank you, Lara.



**Put a (✓) or (x):**

- 1 Lara is a police officer. ( )
- 2 Lara can rescue people from floods. ( )
- 3 Lara says she is never scared. ( )
- 4 Lara's team helped people quickly. ( )

**Find words in the text that mean .... :**

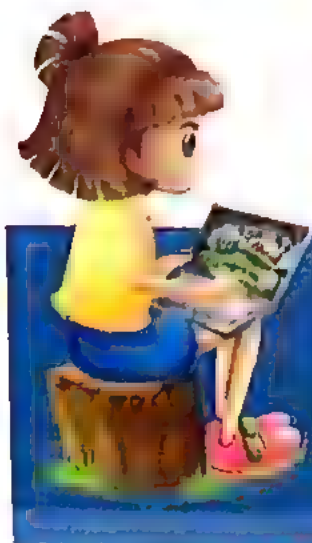
- 1 very serious ( ..... )
- 2 take someone out of a dangerous place ( ..... )
- 3 frightening ( ..... )
- 4 a lot of (rainfall) ( ..... )
- 5 people who need help (two words) ( ..... ) ( ..... )

**Copy the following sentence:**

 A man is known by the company he keeps.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

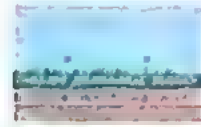


الإجابات النموذجية  
موجودة على صفحاتنا على الفيس  
@StepAheadSeries

## LESSON 4 Pages 82-83

traditional  
farming

زراعة تقليدية

irrigation  
system

نظام الري

farmer



فلاح - مزارع

water (v)



يروي

dry areas



أماكن جافة

sources of  
water

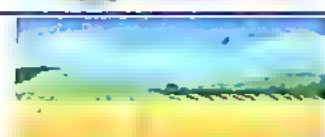
مصادر المياه

hydroponic



زراعة مائية

field



حقل

farm



مزرعة

soil



تربة

crops



محاصيل

spray



رش - يرش

well



بئر

drip



تنقيط - ينقط

grow food



يزرعوا الطعام

bring



يُحضِر

rainfall



هطول الأمطار

change



يغيّر

desert



صحراء

cover



يغطي

Ancient  
Egyptians

المصريون القدماء

contain



يحتوي على

statue



تمثال

still



لا يزال

modern



حديث - عصري

today



اليوم






|                  |                                                                                   |                |              |                                                                                     |             |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| lake             |  | بحيرة          | whole        |   | كل          |
| spring           |  | عين مائية      | both types   |  | كلا النمطين |
| waste water      |  | يبدد المياه    | the best way |  | أفضل طريقة  |
| holes            |  | فتحات          | useful       |   | مفيد - نافع |
| minerals         |  | معادن          | anywhere     |  | في أي مكان  |
| a lot less water |  | مياه أقل بكثير | countries    |  | دول         |

### Prepositions

|               |             |                           |                   |
|---------------|-------------|---------------------------|-------------------|
| through pipes | عبر أنابيب  | on land                   | على الأرض         |
| in the past   | في الماضي   | good for                  | جيد لـ            |
| over time     | بمرور الوقت | look like                 | يشبه - مثل        |
| across        | عبر - بعبر  | isn't lost to evaporation | لا تُفقد بالتبخير |

### Phonics

the "ous" sounds:

|           |                                                                                     |      |          |                                                                                       |       |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| dangerous |  | خطير | enormous |  | ضخم   |
| generous  |  | كريم | famous   |  | مشهور |
| nervous   |  | عصبي |          |                                                                                       |       |

## Vocabulary Study

|                            |                                                                             |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>traditional farming</b> | : farming that doesn't depend on modern ways.                               |
| <b>dry areas</b>           | : places that doesn't have enough water.                                    |
| <b>hydroponic</b>          | : the process of growing plants in water without soil.                      |
| <b>well (n)</b>            | : a hole in the ground that has fresh water.                                |
| <b>crops</b>               | : plants that are grown as food.                                            |
| <b>irrigation</b>          | : the supply of water to land or crops to help growth.                      |
| <b>sources</b>             | : a place, person, or thing from which something comes.                     |
| <b>field</b>               | : an area of open land planted with crops,                                  |
| <b>soil</b>                | : the upper layer of earth in which plants grow.                            |
| <b>spray</b>               | : liquid that is blown or driven through the air in the form of tiny drops. |
| <b>drip</b>                | : to fall in or as if in drops.                                             |
| <b>Ancient Egyptians</b>   | : people who lived in Egypt very long ago.                                  |
| <b>hole</b>                | : a hollow place in a solid body or surface.                                |
| <b>statue</b>              | : a carved figure of a person or animal.                                    |
| <b>nervous</b>             | : getting angry quickly.                                                    |
| <b>enormous</b>            | : very large.                                                               |
| <b>famous</b>              | : known by a lot of people.                                                 |

## Farming in dry areas

We all know that plants need sunlight, food, and water. So how do people grow food in the desert, when there isn't enough water?

## Spray

Farmers in dry countries need to water their crops. There isn't enough rainfall to give the crops all the water they need so they use irrigation. This means bringing water in through pipes, from wells, canals, or other sources of water. Farmers also use pumps to move water from rivers or wells to the fields. Ancient Egyptians used irrigation in the past, and people still need it today. Irrigation systems have changed over time and now they can carry more water.

The problem with modern irrigation is that it can take too much water out of rivers, lakes, and springs.

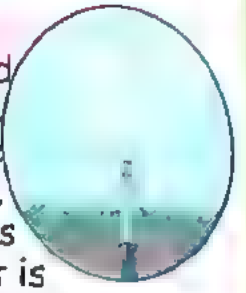






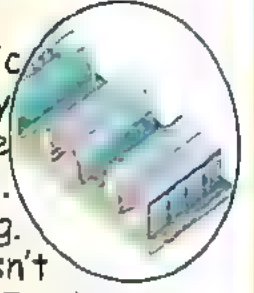
### Drip

There are different ways to irrigate a field. Flood irrigation covers a whole field in water. Or there are systems that spray water across a field. Both these types can waste water. The best way is drip irrigation. This is where water drips onto the plants through holes in the pipes. The water only goes onto the plant, where it is needed, not into the ground. And water isn't lost to evaporation.



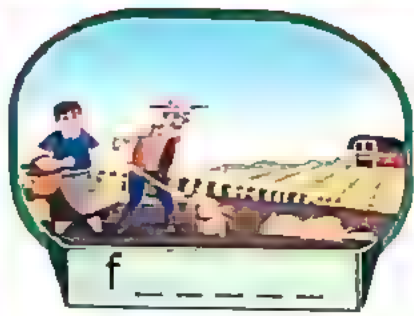
### Hydroponic farm

A new way of farming in dry countries is hydroponic farming. This is a modern technology that is useful in dry countries. It uses only water, not soil, to grow plants. The special water contains the minerals that the plant needs. This system uses a lot less water than traditional farming. Farmers can start a hydroponic farm anywhere - it doesn't have to be on land that is good for traditional farming. Is this what all farms will look like in the future?



## Exercises on Lesson 4

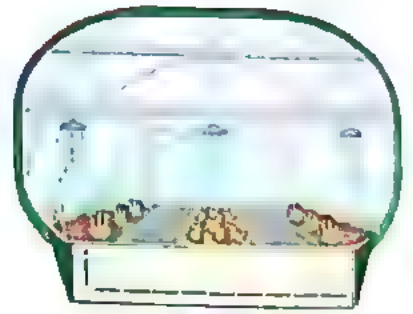
### 1 Supply the missing letters.



f \_ \_ \_ \_



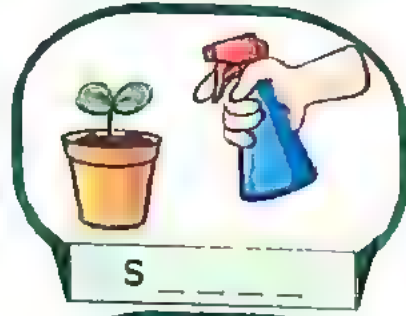
W \_ \_ \_ \_



i \_ \_ \_ \_



S \_ \_ \_ \_



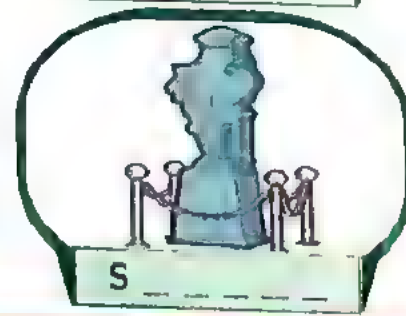
S \_ \_ \_ \_



d \_ \_ \_ \_



A \_ \_ \_ \_ E \_ \_ \_ \_



S \_ \_ \_ \_



f \_ \_ \_ \_



## 2 Read the following passage and answer the questions:

We all know that plants need sunlight, food, and water. So how do people grow food in the desert, when there isn't enough water?

Farmers in dry countries need to water their crops. There isn't enough rainfall to give the crops all the water they need so they use irrigation. This means bringing water in through pipes, from wells, canals, or other sources of water. Farmers also use pumps to move water from rivers or wells to the fields. Ancient Egyptians used irrigation in the past, and people still need it today. Irrigation systems have changed over time and now they can carry more water.

The problem with modern irrigation is that it can take too much water out of rivers, lakes, and springs.

There are different ways to irrigate a field. Flood irrigation covers a whole field in water. Or there are systems that spray water across a field. Both these types can waste water. The best way is drip irrigation. This is where water drips onto the plants through holes in the pipes. The water only goes onto the plant, where it is needed, not into the ground. And water isn't lost to evaporation.

A new way of farming in dry countries is hydroponic farming. This is a modern technology that is useful in dry countries. It uses only water, not soil, to grow plants. The special water contains the minerals that the plant needs. This system uses a lot less water than traditional farming. Farmers can start a hydroponic farm anywhere – it doesn't have to be on land that is good for traditional farming.

## A "Answer the following questions:

- 1 Where do farmers get water from for irrigation?
- 2 What can farmers use to move water out of rivers or wells?
- 3 What is the problem with irrigation?
- 4 Why does flood irrigation waste water?

## B "Put a (✓) or (×):

- 1 Hydroponic farming is good for countries that have too much water. ( )
- 2 Hydroponic farming uses special soil. ( )
- 3 There are minerals in the water in a hydroponic farm. ( )
- 4 A hydroponic farm doesn't have to be on farming land. ( )

## 3 Copy the following sentence:

 A bad workman blames his tools.



# Lesson 5 Pages 84-85

water  
engineering



هندسة المياه

desalination



تحلية المياه

aqueduct



قناة مائية

waterwheel



ساقية

the High Dam



السد العالي

citadel



قلعة

Lake Nasser



بحيرة ناصر

ancient  
temples



معابد قديمة

turn a turbine



يدير التوربين

hydroelectric  
power



طاقة كهرومائية

energy



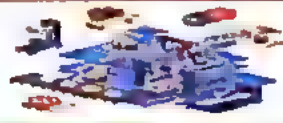
طاقة

gravity



جاذبية

machines



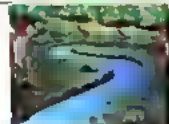
آلات

ancient  
Greece



اليونان القديمة

running  
water



مياه جارية

ancient Rome



روما القديمة

mountain



جبل

old



قديم

tall tower



برج عالي

monuments



أثار

higher  
ground



أرض أعلى

oxen



ثيران

lower place



مكان أدنى

the largest



الأضخم

shadoof












الشادوف

electricity



كهرباء

|           |                                                                                   |             |                 |                                                                                     |                |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| bucket    |  | دلو - جردل  | cost less money |   | تكلف أموال أقل |
| flood (v) |  | يفيض - يغمر | create          |   | يكون           |
| provide   |  | يمد - يزود  | control         |   | يُتحكم         |
| develop   |  | يطور        | expensive       |  | غالي           |
| useful    |  | مفيد - نافع | as well         | as well                                                                             | أيضًا          |

## Vocabulary Study

|                     |                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| aqueduct            | : an artificial channel for carrying water.                                                                                     |
| the High Dam        | : one of the world's largest dams on the Nile River in southern Egypt.                                                          |
| Lake Nasser         | : the lake formed after building the High Dam in Aswan.                                                                         |
| turbine             | : a machine for producing continuous power.                                                                                     |
| energy              | : the strength or power required for physical or mental activity.                                                               |
| desalination        | : the process of removing salt from seawater.                                                                                   |
| waterwheel          | : a large wheel driven by flowing water, used to raise water to a higher level.                                                 |
| temple              | : a building devoted to the worship.                                                                                            |
| hydroelectric power | : electricity produced from generators driven by turbines that convert the energy of falling or fast-flowing water into energy. |
| gravity             | : the force that attracts a body toward the center of the earth, or toward any other physical body having mass.                 |
| shadoof             | : an old device used in Egypt raising water, especially for irrigation.                                                         |
| bucket              | : a usually round container with a handle for holding or carrying liquids.                                                      |
| flood (v)           | : to cover a place or area with water.                                                                                          |
| monuments           | : statues, buildings, or other structures built very long ago.                                                                  |
| oxen                | : animals kept for milk or meat; cows or bulls (singular: ox).                                                                  |
| create              | : to bring (something) into existence.                                                                                          |
| electricity         | : a form of energy.                                                                                                             |





## In the past



**a waterwheel**

Waterwheels used the energy of running water to move machines. The wheel is in a river, and the water makes it go round. The oldest picture of a waterwheel is from Egypt over 2,500 years ago! People have used waterwheels to help with irrigation and drinking water for a long time. They are very important today, too. Fayoum has more than 200 waterwheels.



**an aqueduct**

People built aqueducts in the past to move water from wells or rivers into cities. The aqueduct of Cairo took water from the Nile to the Citadel of Cairo. The water ran from a well into a canal on top of a wall. Later, people built a tall tower with a well inside it. Water could move up inside the tower with six waterwheels. They used oxen to make the wheels go round. When water got to the top of the tower, it could go down the aqueduct to the citadel because of gravity. People built aqueducts in ancient Greece and ancient Rome as well. They could move water from high up in the mountains, to cities where people needed it.

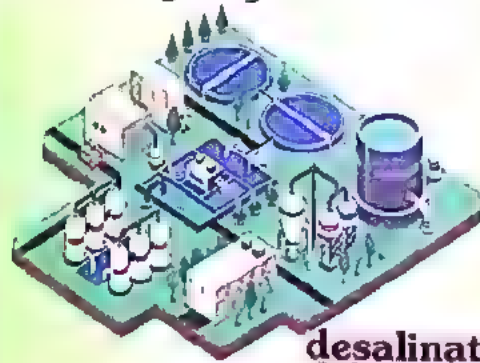
## Today

### High Dam



The High Dam is famous because it is the largest dam in the world. When the Nile flooded in the past, too much water went onto the land. Now, the dam can control the water and stop flooding. The dam stops the water in the River Nile and makes Lake Nasser. This helps to provide Egypt with enough water. The moving water turns a turbine to make hydroelectric power, so the dam gives us electricity, too. A turbine turns round, just like a wheel does.

When people built the dam, they had to move the ancient monuments at Abu Simbel to higher ground!



**desalination**

Desalination means taking the salt out of sea water to get fresh water. It is useful in countries like Egypt which don't have a lot of water. It can be expensive and use a lot of energy, but engineers are developing new technologies that use less energy and cost less money. In the future, people will get more fresh water from desalination.



*This is a shadoof. It's old. It is used at an oasis in the desert.*

*It works when a bucket goes into a well and brings up water.*



## Exercises on Lesson 5

### 1 Read the following passage and answer the questions:

Waterwheels used the energy of running water to move machines. The wheel is in a river, and the water makes it go round. The oldest picture of a waterwheel is from Egypt over 2,500 years ago! People have used waterwheels to help with irrigation and drinking water for a long time. They are very important today, too. Fayoum has more than 200 waterwheels.

People built aqueducts in the past to move water from wells or rivers into cities. The aqueduct of Cairo took water from the Nile to the Citadel of Cairo. The water ran from a well into a canal on top of a wall. Later, people built a tall tower with a well inside it. Water could move up inside the tower with six waterwheels. They used oxen to make the wheels go round. When water got to the top of the tower, it could go down the aqueduct to the citadel because of gravity.

People built aqueducts in ancient Greece and ancient Rome as well. They could move water from high up in the mountains, to cities where people needed it.

The High Dam is famous because it is the largest dam in the world. When the Nile flooded in the past, too much water went onto the land. Now, the dam can control the water and stop flooding. The dam stops the water in the River Nile and makes Lake Nasser. This helps to provide Egypt with enough water. The moving water turns a turbine to make hydroelectric power, so the dam gives us electricity, too. A turbine turns round, just like a wheel does.

When people built the dam, they had to move the ancient monuments at Abu Simbel to higher ground!

Desalination means taking the salt out of sea water to get fresh water. It is useful in countries like Egypt which don't have a lot of water. It can be expensive and use a lot of energy, but engineers are developing new technologies that use less energy and cost less money. In the future, people will get more fresh water from desalination.



**Answer the following questions:**

- 1 How old is the oldest waterwheel?
- 2 How many waterwheels can you see in Fayoum?
- 3 How many waterwheels were inside the tower for the Cairo aqueduct?
- 4 Why does water go down from the top of the tower?
- 5 Why is the Aswan Dam famous?
- 6 Where did the monuments at Abu Simbel move to?
- 7 What do we have to take out of sea water?
- 8 Does desalination use a lot of energy or not very much?

**Write T (True) or F (False):**

- 1 Waterwheels use water in lakes.
- 2 Waterwheels can help with irrigation.
- 3 An aqueduct moves water from a high place to a lower place.
- 4 The water in an aqueduct runs in a canal under a wall.
- 5 The Aswan Dam created Lake Nasser.
- 6 The dam uses moving water to make electricity.
- 7 Desalination is useful in countries with lots of water.
- 8 Desalination doesn't cost a lot of money at the moment.

**2****Match "A" with "B":**

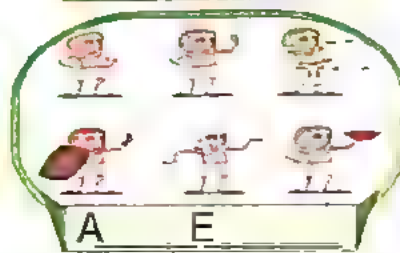
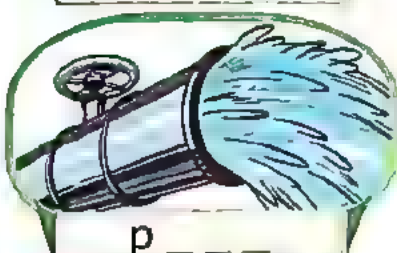
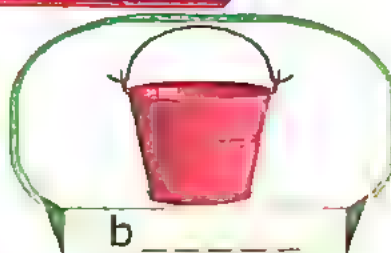
| 'A'            | 'B'                                                  |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 desalination | a) a lake created by stopping water in a river.      |
| 2 aqueduct     | b) it turns around like a wheel.                     |
| 3 waterwheel   | c) taking salt out of seawater.                      |
| 4 toxins       | d) a wheel that uses running water to create energy. |
| 5 turbine      | e) it carries water long distances.                  |

**3****Copy the following sentence:**

Health is better than wealth.

**1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: (2Ms)**

Amgad : Do you have enough money to buy ice creams?  
 Fares : .....  
 Amgad : How much money do you have?  
 Fares : .....

**2 Supply the missing letters: (6Ms)****3 Choose the correct word in brackets: (8Ms)**

- ① The (barrier – Lake Nasser – High Dam) controls the water of the Nile in Egypt.
- ② There is too (many – much – enough) sand in the sandbag.
- ③ He's a (volunteer – firefighter – police officer). He works without getting paid.
- ④ There aren't (too many – too much – enough) chairs for everyone to sit on.
- ⑤ There are (pipes – barriers – sandbags) under the ground for water to move through.
- ⑥ There are too (much – many – enough) boys in the room. We can't get in.
- ⑦ There are (drains – pumps – canals) in the streets for rainwater to go down.
- ⑧ There (am not – isn't – aren't) enough paper for every pupil.

**4 Rewrite the following sentences doing as shown: (4Ms)**

- ① There is too much meat. (plates of meat)  
 .....  
 ↘
- ② We need more water for deserts to be green land. (enough)  
 .....  
 ↘





- 3 His food is full of lots of salt.

(too much)



- 4 I can't give my friends pencils. I don't have many.

(enough)



**5 Read the following passage and answer the questions below. (4Ms)**

My grandmother's father was a farmer. He had a big farm near Benha. He had an old house there. There were lots of animals on his farm. He had four cows. He had six goats and seven sheep. He had two horses. He had lots of chickens and ducks. But he didn't have any buffaloes or donkeys. He and his family were happy.

**A Answer the following questions:**

- 1 Where was the farm? .....
- 2 How many sheep did he have? .....

**B Choose the correct answer:**

- 3 Grandmother's family were [sad – happy – angry].
- 4 He had four [donkeys – buffaloes – cows].

**6 Write a paragraph of four sentences on: (4Ms)**

**"The Shadoof"**

**Ideas to help you:**

- What's it? Is it new or old?
- Where is it used? How does it work?



**7 Copy the following sentence: (2Ms)**

A good beginning makes a good end.



Connect  
Plus Reading  
Adventures

# Fares and the Fish





## Fares and the Fish

### Main Vocabulary

|                   |                |             |                    |
|-------------------|----------------|-------------|--------------------|
| broken            | مكسور          | ramp        | منحدر              |
| bone              | عظمة           | surprise    | مفاجأة             |
| cast              | جبيرة          | later       | فيما بعد           |
| call an ambulance | يستدعي الإسعاف | so sad      | حزين جدًا          |
| had an x-ray      | أجرى أشعة إكس  | rude        | فظ - غير مهذب      |
| hospital          | مستشفى         | comic       | مجلة بها قصص هزلية |
| lay down          | رقد            | garage      | جراج               |
| hurt              | كانت تؤلمه     | Be careful! | كن حريص.           |
| stupid accident   | حادثة غبية     | rested      | استراح             |
| breathe           | يُتنفس         | worried     | قلقان - منزعج      |
| mask              | قناع           | So do I!    | هيا نذهب للبيت.    |

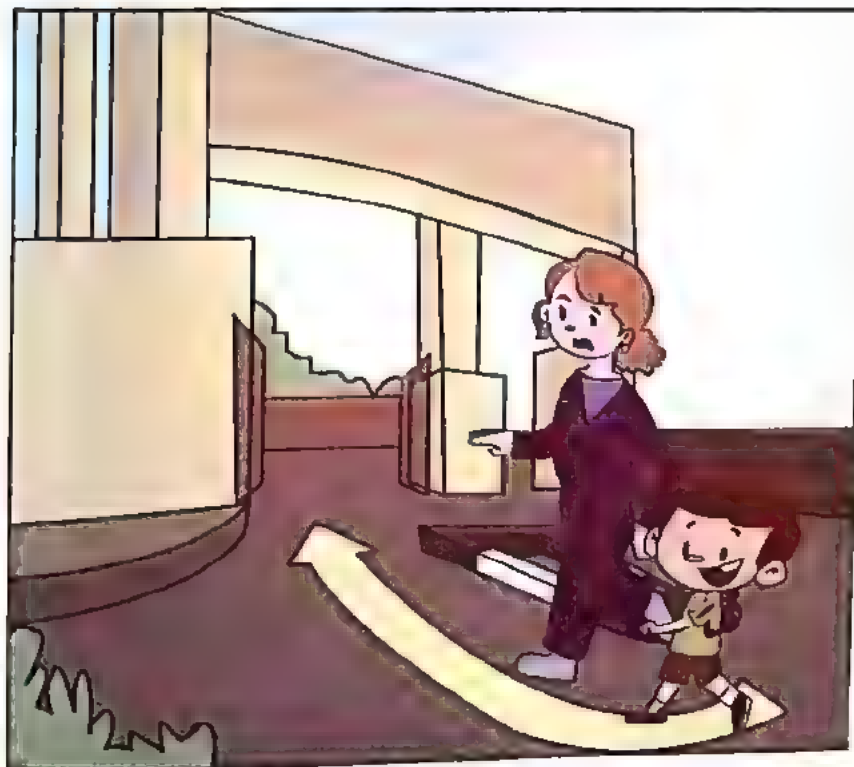
|               |                |             |             |
|---------------|----------------|-------------|-------------|
| sports center | مركز رياضي     | competition | مسابقة      |
| athlete       | لاعب ألعاب قوى | helmet      | خوذة        |
| skateboard    | لوح تزلج       | knee pads   | واقى الركبة |
| skateboarding | رياضة التزلج   | pool        | حمام سباحة  |
| cycle         | يركب دراجته    | snorkel     | أنبوب الغطس |
| train         | يتمرن - يتدرب  | fish tank   | حوض سمك     |

|                  |                |                  |                    |
|------------------|----------------|------------------|--------------------|
| close to         | بالقرب من      | looks fun        | تبدو ممتعة         |
| put on           | يلبس           | try              | يجرب               |
| apologize to     | يعتذر لـ       | push             | يدفع               |
| came back        | عاد - رجع      | fell             | سقط                |
| go down          | ينزل           | won't be able to | لن يكون قادرًا على |
| Go away!         | اذهبوا بعيدًا. | slipped          | انزلق              |
| got his bike out | أخرج دراجته    | pack             | يحزم               |
| went out         | خرج            | borrow           | يستعير - يستلف     |

|                   |                                                          |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ambulance</b>  | : An ambulance takes people to hospital.                 |
| <b>cast</b>       | : You wear a cast if you break a bone.                   |
| <b>fish tank</b>  | : People can keep fish in a fish tank.                   |
| <b>mask</b>       | : A mask helps you see when you are swimming underwater. |
| <b>ramp</b>       | : How high is the ramp?                                  |
| <b>skateboard</b> | : I can go really fast on my new skateboard!             |
| <b>snorkel</b>    | : You can breathe underwater with a snorkel.             |

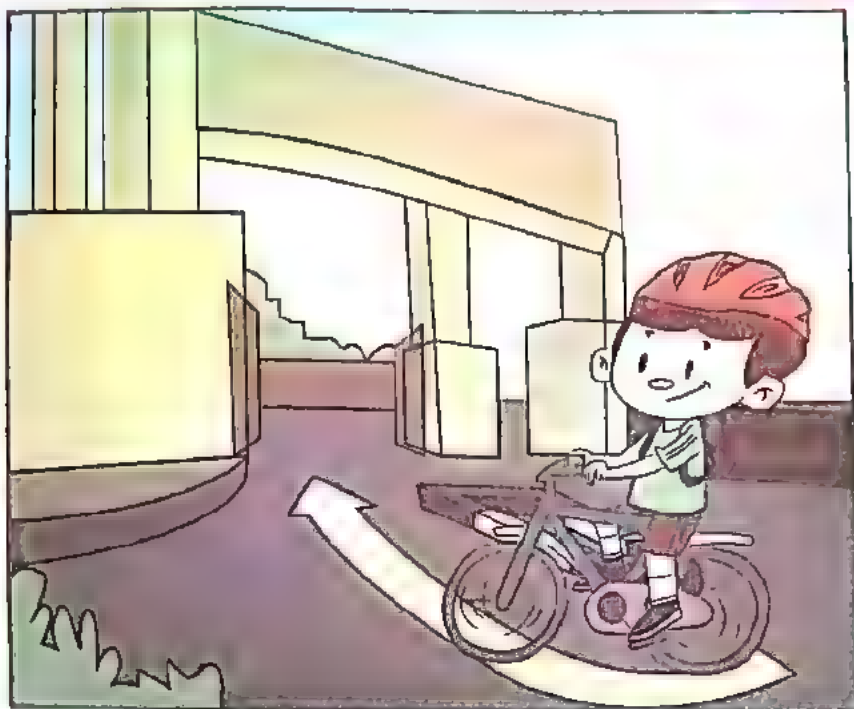


Fares lives in Hurghada with his family. He loved swimming. He went swimming every day and trained in the pool for an hour. He wanted to be an athlete and to win lots of competitions.



Fares and his family lived close to the sports center. Sometimes he walked to the pool with his mom or dad.





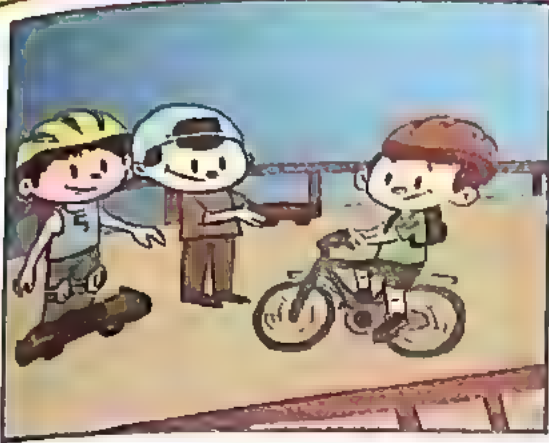
Sometimes he cycled to the pool.



One day, Fares got his bike out of the garage so he could cycle to the sports center. 'Have you got your cycle helmet, Fares?' asked his mom.

'Yes Mom, of course,' said Fares, putting on his helmet. 'See you soon!'

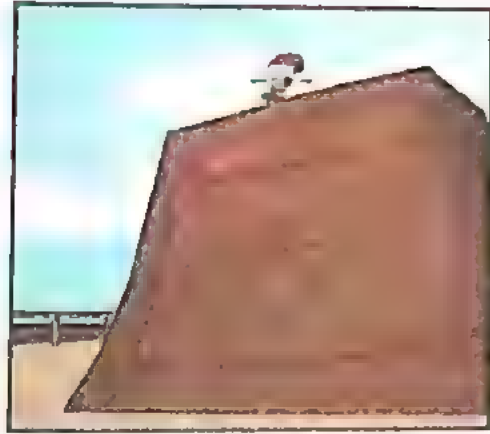
Fares cycled through the park. It was a sunny morning and he left happy.



In the park, Fares saw his friends. They were on their skateboards.

'Be careful, Adam,' said Fares. 'Why aren't you wearing a helmet or knee pads?' 'I don't need to,' said Adam. 'I'm really good at skateboarding.' 'I haven't tried skateboarding before,' said Fares. 'It looks fun!'

'Do you want to try?' asked Adam. 'Yes please!' said Fares.



Fares stood at the top of the ramp. 'How high is it?' he asked Adam. 'I don't know,' said Adam. 'It isn't very high. It's easy!'



Fares stood on the skateboard and pushed with his feet. He went quickly down the ramp – but he was too fast! Fares slipped and fell.





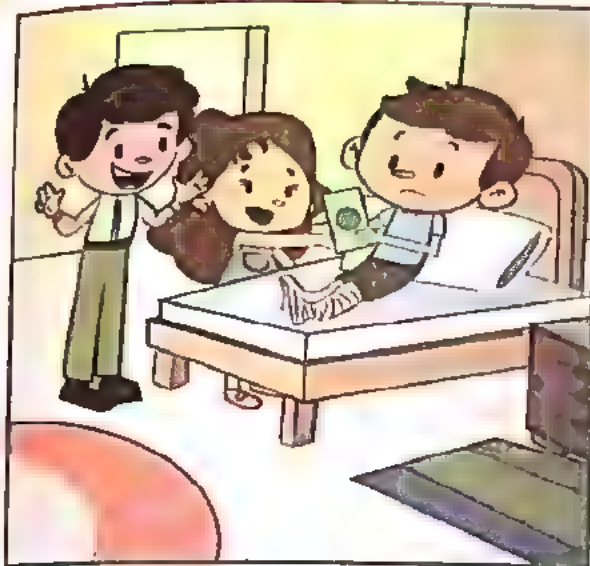
'Are you OK?' asked Adam. He was worried. 'No,' said Fares. 'My leg hurts.' 'Can you move it?' asked Adam. 'No, I can't,' said Fares.



'It might be broken,' said Adam. 'I'm going to call your mom, and then I'm going to call an ambulance.' 'Oh no,' said Fares. 'I won't be able to swim!'



At the hospital, Fares had an x-ray. 'I'm sorry,' said the doctor. 'Your leg is broken. Look at this.' Fares saw his bone on the photo. 'You will have to wear a cast for about six weeks,' said the doctor. Fares was very sad.



At home, Fares lay down on his bed. He was angry and sad, and his leg hurt.

Do you want to come and watch TV, Fares?' asked his sister Dalia. 'No,' said Fares.

Do you want to borrow my comic, Fares?' asked his little brother Wael. 'No,' said Fares. 'Go away.'

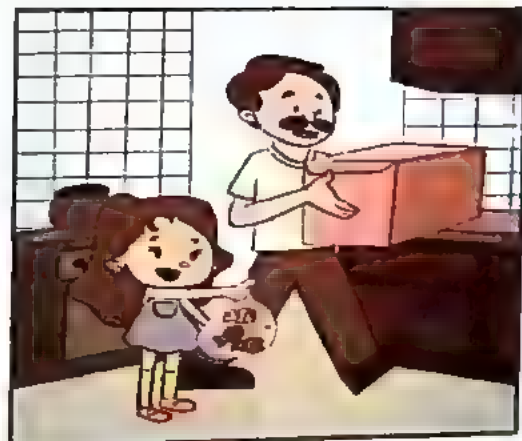


Later that evening, Fares apologized to his family. 'I'm sorry I was rude,' he said. 'I know you are trying to help me. I'm angry and sad because I had a stupid accident, and now I can't swim.' 'Don't worry, Fares,' said Mom. 'We understand. Let's watch a movie together,' 'Thank you,' said Fares.



They watched a movie and then the children went to bed. But Fares' mom and dad were worried. Fares was usually happy and kind.

'I don't like seeing Fares so sad,' said Dad. 'What can we do?' asked mom. 'he wants to swim, but he can't.'



The next day, Dad and Dalia went out early. When they came back, they had lots of boxes.

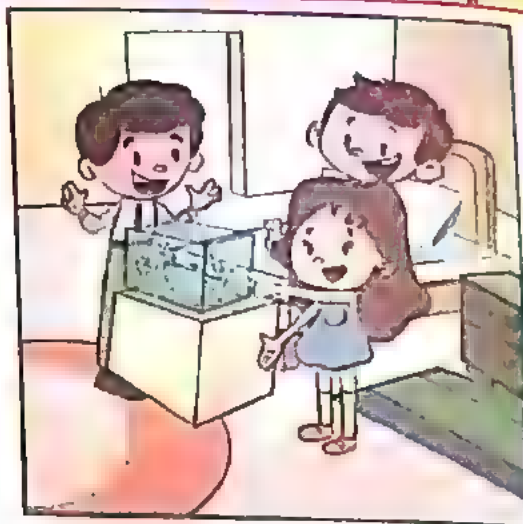
They took the boxes into the kitchen. 'What are you doing?' asked Mom. 'It's a surprise,' said Dalia.



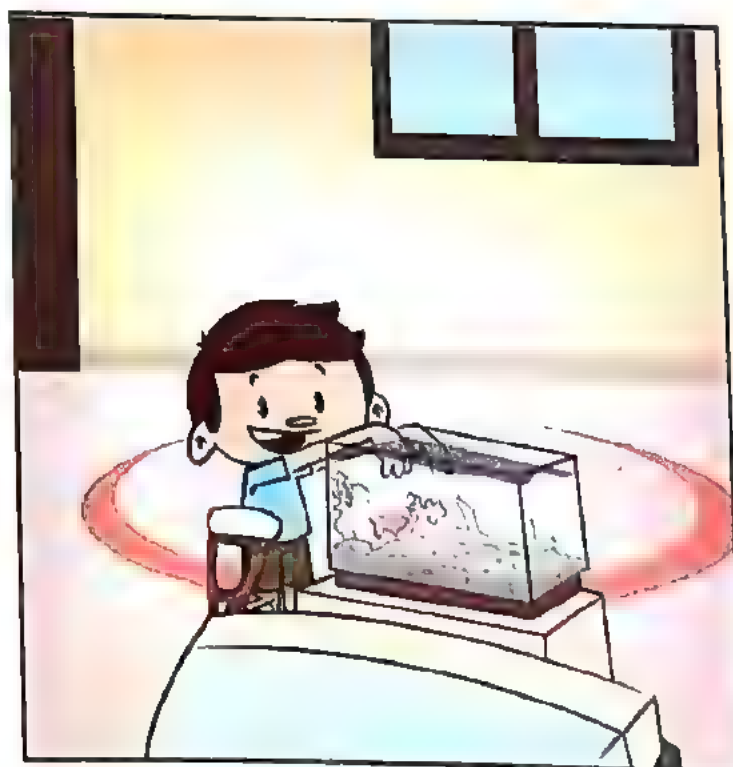


Later, Dad went to see Fares. "Fares, look at this," he said.

He carried a large fish tank into the room and put it on the table at the end of the bed. Fares looked. He could see lots of beautiful fish.



"They're beautiful!" he said. "Thank you!" "How many fish can you see?" asked Wael. "I can see lots of fish! There are too many to count! I love them!" Fares was very happy.



Fares enjoyed watching the fish. He learned the names of the different types of fish. He fed them and kept their water clean. Fares was happy and he rested. Slowly, his leg got better. 'Soon I'll be able to swim, like you,' he said to his fish.



After two months, Fares was better. He didn't have to wear the cast, and he could walk and run.

'Let's go to the beach!' said his mom. The family packed their things for a day at the beach. 'I want to swim in the sea!' said Wael. 'So do I!' said Fares.



At the beach, Dad had another surprise. Put on this mask and snorkel, Fares,' he said. You can swim and breathe underwater.'

Fares went into the sea, and he looked under the water. He could see lots of fish!

It's so beautiful, I want to swim like a fish!' he laughed.

## (1) Read and circle T (true) or F (false):

- ① Fares went swimming every day. ....
- ② Fares always went to the sports center by car. ....
- ③ Fares wanted to try skateboarding. ....
- ④ Adam phoned an ambulance. ....
- ⑤ Fares was happy when he had to wear a cast. ....
- ⑥ Dalia and Wael were kind to Fares. ....
- ⑦ Dad and Dalia had a surprise for Fares. ....
- ⑧ Fares counted all the fish. ....

## (2) Read and match:

- ① Fares wanted to be
- ② Fares always wore
- ③ Fares went down the ramp
- ④ Fares couldn't
- ⑤ The doctor showed Fares
- ⑥ Fares has to wear

- a) too quickly.
- b) a cast in his leg.
- c) a cycle helmet when he rode his bike.
- d) an x-ray.
- e) move his leg.
- f) an athlete.





**(3) Who says it? Read and write (Adam, Fares, Dalia or Wael):**

- ① 'I'm really good at skateboarding.' .....
- ② 'It isn't very high.' .....
- ③ 'I won't be able to swim!' .....
- ④ Do you want to come and watch TV?' .....
- ⑤ 'It's a surprise.' .....
- ⑥ 'How many fish can you see?' .....

**(4) Read and answer:**

- ① Why was Fares angry and sad?  
.....
- ② How did Dalia and Wael try to help Fares?  
.....
- ③ Was Fares kind to them?  
.....
- ④ What did Fares say to his family later that evening? Why?  
.....

**(5) Read and answer:**

- ① Where did the family go when Fares was better?  
.....
- ② What did they want to do there?  
.....
- ③ What did Fares' dad give Fares? Why?  
.....
- ④ What did Fares see in the water?  
.....
- ⑤ How do you think Fares felt?  
.....

**(6) Imagine you are Fares. Write a letter to Adam telling him what happened after the accident. Remember to say thank you to Adam for helping you.**

.....

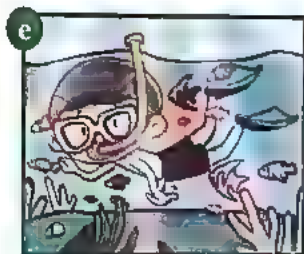
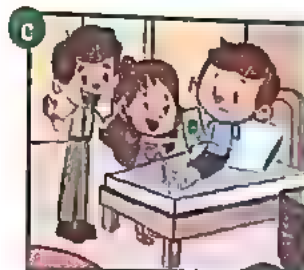
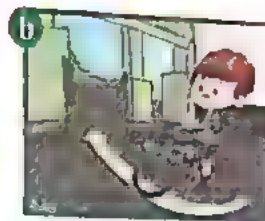
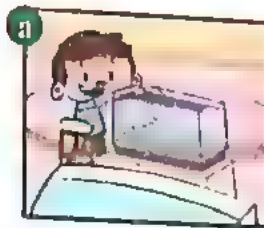
.....

.....

.....

## (7) Read and match:

- 1 Fares walked or cycled to the sports center every day. ☐
- 2 Fares' friends are in the park. ☐
- 3 Fares had an accident. His friend calls an ambulance. ☐
- 4 Fares feels sad and angry. He has to wear a cast. ☐
- 5 Fares is happy. He likes his new fish tank. ☐
- 6 Fares can swim and breathe under water. ☐



## (8) Read and write the names:

Adam – Dad – Mom – Dalia – Fares – Wael

1) 'Have you got your cycle helmet, Fares?' .....

2) 'It might be broken. I'm going to call your mom ...' .....

3) 'Do you want to come and watch TV, Fares?' .....

4) 'I'm sorry I was rude.' .....

5) 'How many fish can you see?' .....

6) 'Put on this mask and snorkel, Fares.' .....





## (9) Read and number:

- ☐ At the beach, Dad has a surprise.
- ☐ Now Fares could swim and breathe under water.
- ☐ When Fares was better, the family went to the beach.
- ☐ Fares went into the sea and he saw lots of beautiful fish!
- ☐ Dad gave Fares a mask and a snorkel.
- ☐ Wael and Fares were excited. They wanted to swim in the sea!

## (10) Read and write the names:

the beach – feeling better – lots of fish – knee pads –  
can swim – broke your leg

To:

Subject:

Dear Fares

I hope you are 1 ..... now. I am sorry you had an accident and 2 ..... Next time I go skateboarding, I will wear a helmet and 3 ..... Did you enjoy your day at 4 .....? I'm glad you 5 ..... again. I hope you saw 6 ..... under water.

See you soon.

Adam

## (11) Read and write (Yes) or (No):

- ① Fares couldn't swim, or cycle. He was sad. ....
- ② Dad bought Fares a fish tank and some fish. ....
- ③ Fares didn't like the fish. He was unhappy. ....
- ④ Fares' leg got better. He didn't have to wear a cast. ....
- ⑤ Fares and his family all went to the pool. ....
- ⑥ Wael and Dalla wore a snorkel and mask, then swam. ....
- ⑦ Fares saw lots of fish in the water. ....

## (12) Find, circle and write the names:

Adam – Dad – Dalia – Fares – Wael

- ① ..... tried skateboarding. He slipped and fell.
- ② ..... phoned an ambulance.
- ③ ..... was sad that he had to wear a cast.
- ④ ..... and ..... tried to help Fares and were kind to him.
- ⑤ ..... and ..... had a surprise for Fares.
- ⑥ ..... fed the fish and learned their names.

## (13) Read and order:

- ① an – Fares – wanted – athlete – to be.  
.....
- ② Fares – cycle helmet – wore – always – a.  
.....
- ③ the ramp – quickly – went down – Fares – too.  
.....
- ④ his – Fares – move – leg – couldn't.  
.....
- ⑤ an x-ray – showed – The – him – doctor.  
.....
- ⑥ a cast – wear – Fares – his leg – had to – on.  
.....

## (14) Read and choose:

- ① Why was Fares angry and sad?
  - a. Because he couldn't swim.
  - b. Because he didn't have a skateboard.
- ② What did Wael and Dalia do?
  - a. They watched TV.
  - b. They tried to help Fares.
- ③ What did Mom say when Fares apologized.
  - a. 'You were rude. And now I'm angry.'
  - b. 'Don't worry. Let's watch a movie together.'



2021

Connect Plus (3)

First Term



# Final Revision General Exams

Q K E

S

M

*Together on  
The Right Way*



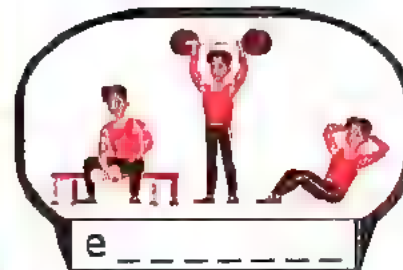
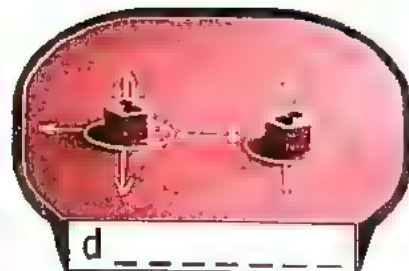
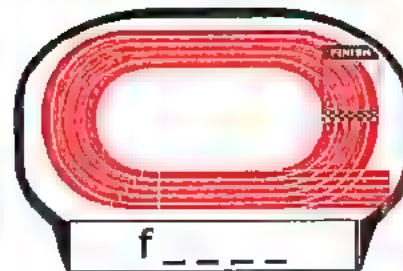
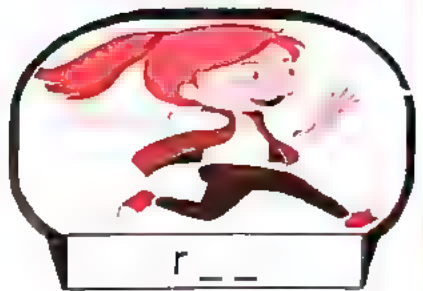
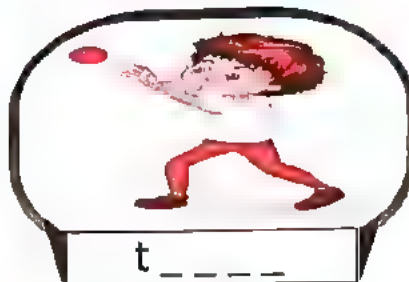
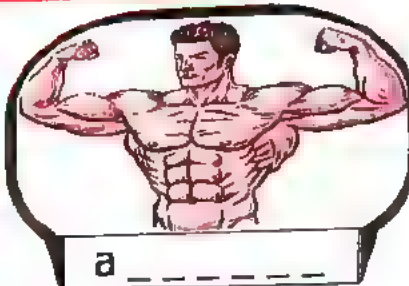
Prepared By  
**A GROUP OF  
SPECIALISTS**

**Primary  
(3)**



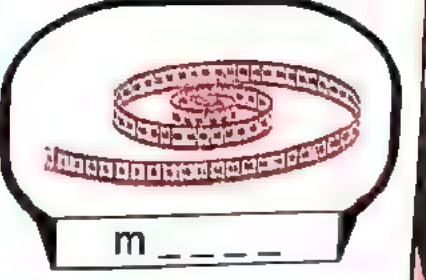
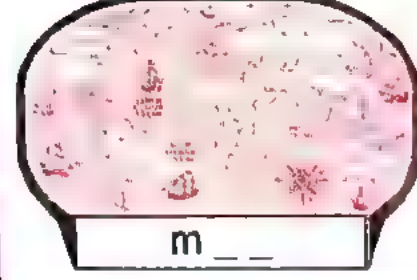
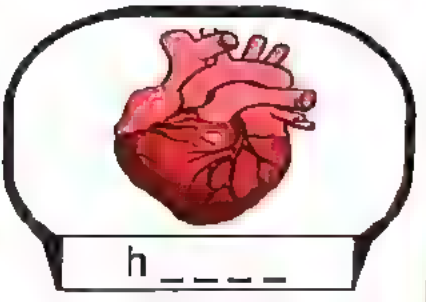
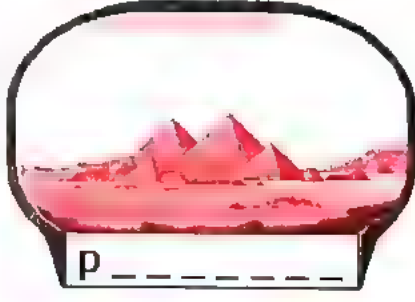
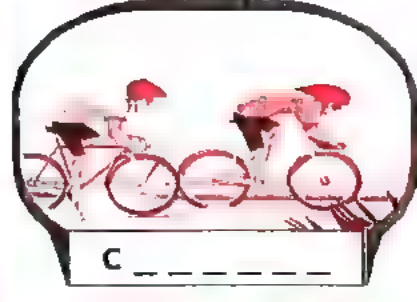
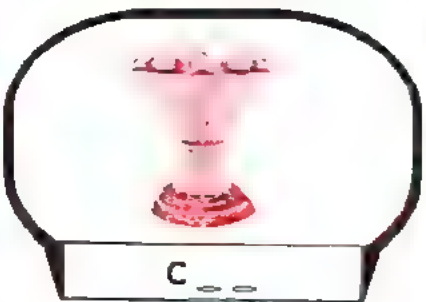
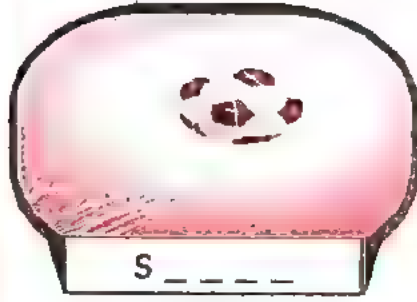
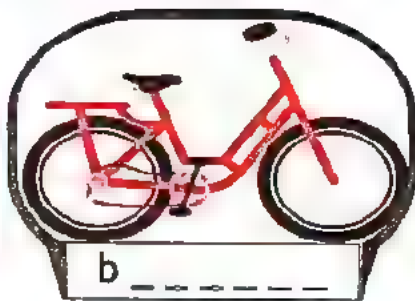
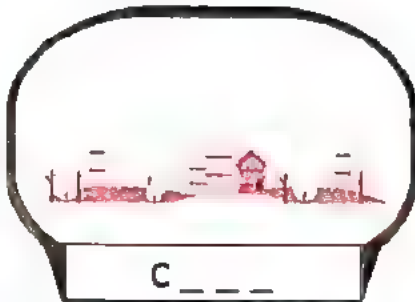
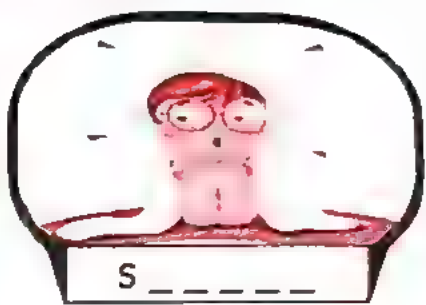
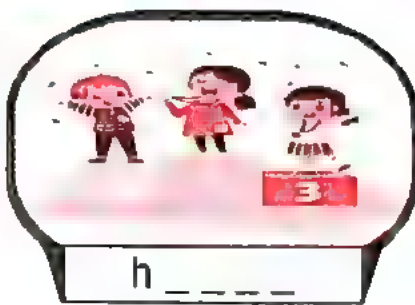
## Unit 1 Revision

1 Supply the missing letters:





# Revision Unit (1)



## Choose the correct word(s): Vocabulary

- ① He made a new world (**map** – country – **record**) when he won the race.
- ② There is a (**athlete** – track – **event**) around the field for running.
- ③ We (**worry** – support – **warm up**) before playing the match.
- ④ The (**second** – hour – **day**) is smaller than the minute.
- ⑤ He is a good (**medal** – sport – **athlete**). He wants to win the first medal.
- ⑥ (**Tests** – Exercise – **Exams**) helps you to get fit.
- ⑦ He ran very fast in the last (**race** – field – **track**).
- ⑧ How (**far** – fast – **old**) can she jump? - She can jump three meters.
- ⑨ She got a (**medal** – competition – **race**) in the last race.
- ⑩ You should (**support** – throw – **shout**) your friend when he has a problem.
- ⑪ Lots of athletes will (**compete** – measure – **talk**) and the fastest will win.
- ⑫ She is a good (**footballer** – runner – **cyclist**). She likes riding bikes.
- ⑬ The first athlete will (**measure** – compete – **win**) a medal.
- ⑭ How (**high** – far – **fast**) can you run? - I can run 200 meters in 30 seconds.
- ⑮ Athletes (**train** – sleep – **draw**) hard to win races.
- ⑯ The (**centimeter** – kilometer – **millimeter**) is bigger than a meter.
- ⑰ You should eat (**unhealthy** – healthy – **fast**) food.
- ⑱ This (**distance** – athlete – **medal**) is very long. Can you jump?
- ⑲ She (**throws** – measures – **jumps**) how high she can jump.
- ⑳ Doing exercise helps you to get (**up** – fat – **fit**).
- ㉑ How (**fast** – old – **high**) can he jump? - He can jump two meters.
- ㉒ It was a great (**challenge** – medal – **cup**) to break the world record.

## Choose the correct word(s): Structures

- ① I think he (**won** – wins – **will win**) the next competition.
- ② Will he (**comes** – come – **came**) to the party?
- ③ She (**will** – won't – **is**) eat her sandwich. She isn't hungry.
- ④ It (**will** – won't – **is**) be easy to win today. It will be difficult.
- ⑤ Will you wear a blue T-shirt? - Yes, I (**won't** – do – **will**).
- ⑥ Will you break the record? - No, I (**will** – won't – **am**).
- ⑦ I think she will (**gets** – getting – **get**) a medal.





- ⑧ The event (was – be – will be) amazing tomorrow.
- ⑨ (Did – Will – Is) he win a medal? - Yes, he will.
- ⑩ The winner (are – will – won't) get a medal.

## 1 Choose the correct word(s): Adjectives

- ① Was Huda (fast – faster – the fastest) than Manar?
- ② Amgad jumps the (high – higher – highest) in the competition.
- ③ Ayman is (slow – slower than – the slowest) Ahmed.
- ④ Dina is (fast – faster – the fastest) girl in the class.
- ⑤ Walid jumped (the highest – high – higher). He came first.
- ⑥ Ola jumped (farther – farthest – far) than Hadeer.
- ⑦ Was Nesma (faster – fast – the fastest) than Hagar?
- ⑧ Ali jumped (the farthest – far – farther) of his friends.

## 2 Choose the correct word(s): Structures

- ① Amir is a good runner (so – but) I think he will win the race.
- ② Mariam likes running (because – and) doing the high jump.
- ③ Wael came second this year (and – so) he'll try harder next year.
- ④ I don't like throwing the ball (or – but) jumping. I like running.
- ⑤ Dalia ran the race (and – but) she didn't win a medal.
- ⑥ I like helping Khalil (because – so) he's my friend.

## 3 Read and check (✓) or cross (X):

- ① If you **make fun** of someone, you are a good friend. ( )
- ② When you **warm up**, you get ready to do exercise. ( )
- ③ It's a good idea to **skip breakfast**. ( )
- ④ When you **apologize**, you say sorry to someone. ( )
- ⑤ You shouldn't tell your friend's **secrets** to other people. ( )

## 4 Read and order:

1 can – she – far – jump – how?

..... ?



2 run – he – how – can – fast?

..... ?

3 the – far – she – ball – how – throw – can?

..... ?

4 he – jump – can – high – how?

..... ?

**Write sentences showing your rules for being a good friend:**

spread rumors – make fun of – listen – tell secrets –  
pressure someone – support – have fun – apologize

## How to be a good friend

| Good friends never ..... | Good friends should ..... |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| .....                    | .....                     |
| .....                    | .....                     |
| .....                    | .....                     |
| .....                    | .....                     |
| .....                    | .....                     |

**Circle the different (c) sound:**

1 camel

city

color

2 crocodile

club

ice

3 space

cake

distance

4 computer

clothes

race

**Read and tick:**

|                     |           |                          |            |                          |
|---------------------|-----------|--------------------------|------------|--------------------------|
| 1 Which is longer?  | hour      | <input type="checkbox"/> | minute     | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 Which is shorter? | meter     | <input type="checkbox"/> | centimeter | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 Which is longer?  | kilometer | <input type="checkbox"/> | meter      | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 Which is shorter? | minute    | <input type="checkbox"/> | second     | <input type="checkbox"/> |



## 11 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

- 1 No, I won't make fun of my friend. (Will)  
.....
- 2 She can run 160 meters in 50 seconds. (How)  
.....
- 3 Ziad can jump far. Samy can jump very far. (than)  
.....
- 4 It will be difficult to win today. (easy)  
.....
- 5 I like high jump and long jump. (don't like)  
.....
- 6 No, he won't play tennis. (Will)  
.....
- 7 Will he be happy? (Yes, ....)  
.....
- 8 He can jump four meters. (How far)  
.....
- 9 He went to bed late. He was late for school. (so) (because)  
.....
- 10 He's wearing a red T-shirt. (tomorrow)  
.....
- 11 Cycling is her favorite sport. She is not a fast cyclist. (but)  
.....
- 12 She can run 100 meters in 55 seconds. (How fast)  
.....
- 13 He isn't good at football or tennis. (is good)  
.....
- 14 Will you compete in the sports event? (No, ....)  
.....
- 15 The winner won't be sad. (happy)  
.....
- 16 He's training hard so he will win the competition. (because)  
.....
- 17 What will you do tomorrow? (I .....)  
.....



## Unit Test 1 1



## 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: (2Ms)

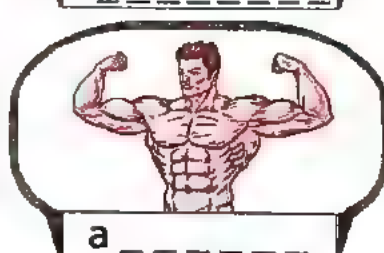
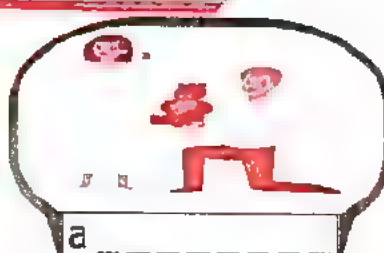
Sameh : Where will you go tomorrow?

Hazem : .....

Sameh : ..... ?

Hazem : Yes, I will meet my friends there.

## 2 Supply the missing letters: (6Ms)



## 3 Choose the correct word in brackets: (8Ms)

- ① She (will – aren't – won't) be sad after the race. She will be happy.
- ② Fady jumped (high – higher – the highest) than Ramy.
- ③ Amir was in a race last month (but – because – so) he didn't win.
- ④ Who is the (slow – slower – slowest) girl?
- ⑤ She wants to come first (so – because – but) she trains hard.
- ⑥ I think she (wins – will win – won) the race next month.
- ⑦ How (high – fast – often) does he go to the club? - Two times a week.
- ⑧ Will he (run – runs – running) fast in the race?

## 4 Rewrite the following sentences doing as shown: (4Ms)

- ① He got a medal.



.....

(tomorrow)

- ② She trains every day. She wants to win a medal.



.....

(because)



# Revision Unit (1)

3 I like basketball and handball.

(don't like)

4 Yes, she will throw the ball.

(Will)

**Read the following passage and answer the questions below: (4Ms)**

Hi, I'm Fares and this is Tarek. Tarek is an athlete so he does a lot of exercise. He wants to compete in the school long jump competition. This is his best event and he wants to win a medal. He competed last year but he didn't win a medal. He didn't come first or second. He came third so he knows he has to try harder his year. He comes to the track three times a week. I go with him because I'm his friend. I warm up with him and I measure the distance he jumps. He jumped his farthest distance this week so I think he will win the competition.

**Answer the following questions:**

1 What does Tarek want to compete in? .....

2 What does Tarek's friend do? .....

**Choose the correct answer:**

3 Last year, Tarek came (first – second – third) in the competition.

4 Tarek comes to the track (three – four – five) times a week.

**Write a paragraph of four sentences on: (4Ms)**

**Football**

**Ideas to help you:**

hobby – football – every week – club – with friends – at school – famous player

**Copy the following sentence:**

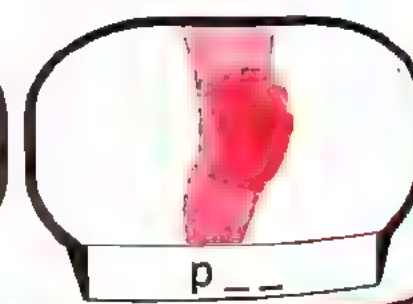
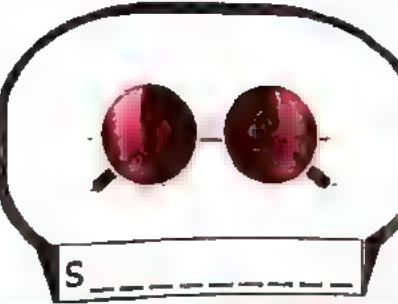
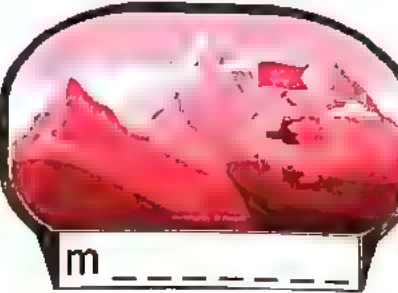
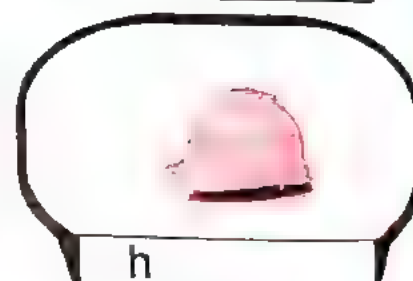
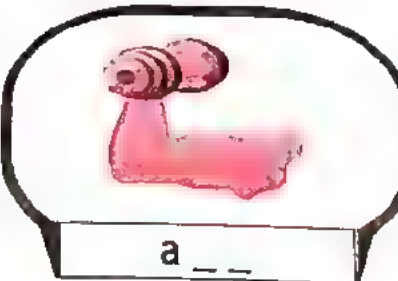
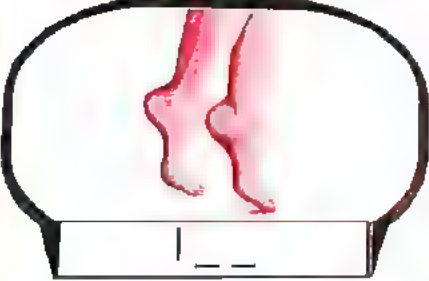
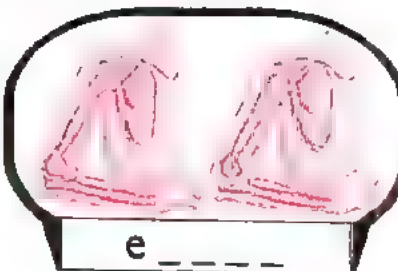
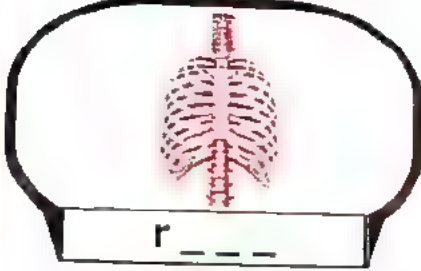
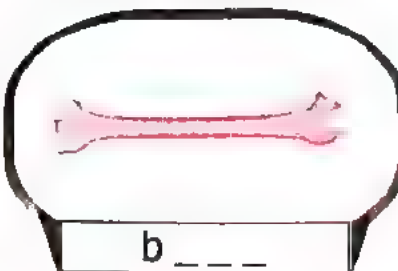
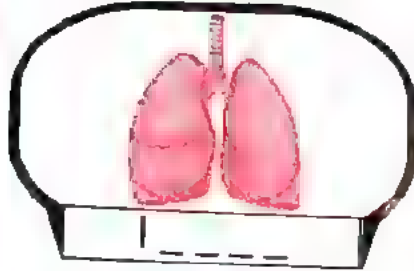
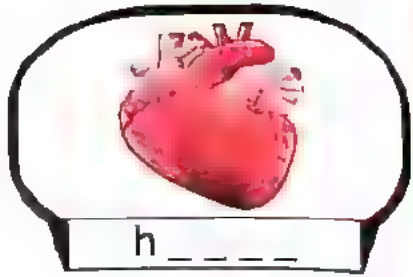
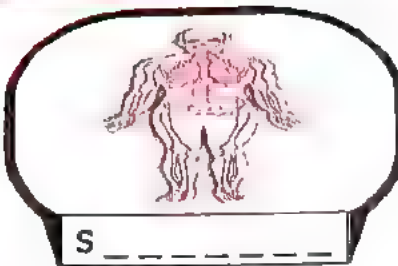
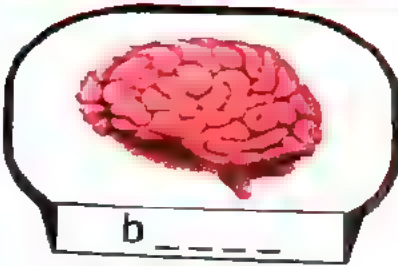
If you're late, then wait at the gate.

(2Ms)



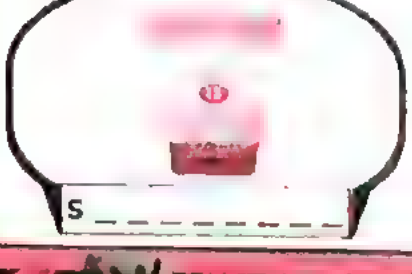
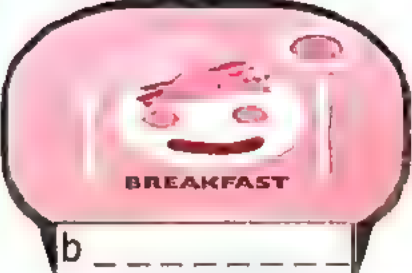
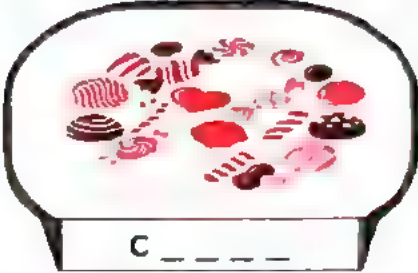
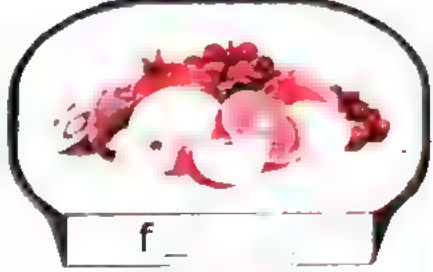
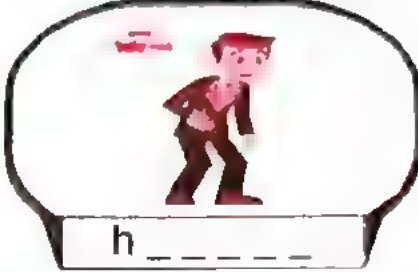
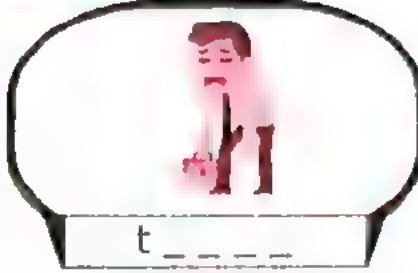
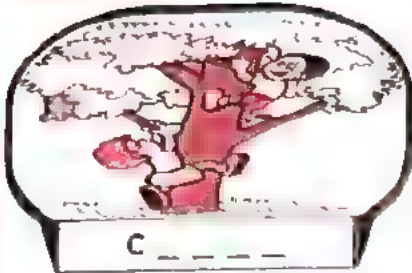
# Unit 2 Revision

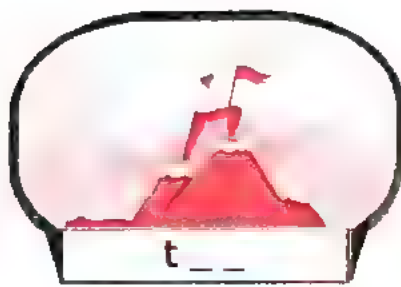
1 Supply the missing letters:



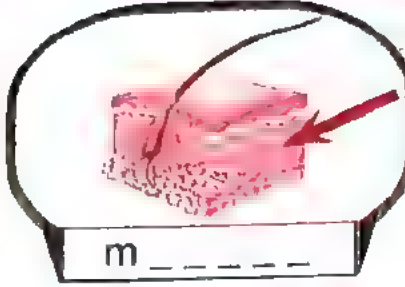


# Revision Unit (2)

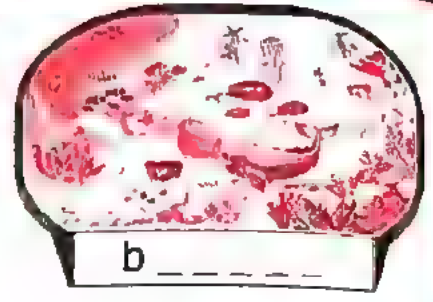




t \_ \_



m \_ \_ \_



b \_ \_ \_



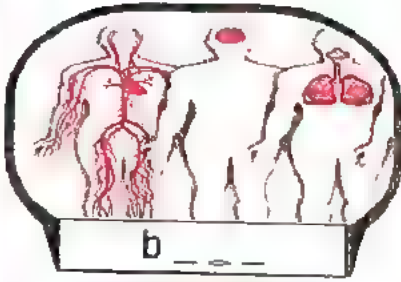
w \_ \_ \_



w \_ \_ \_



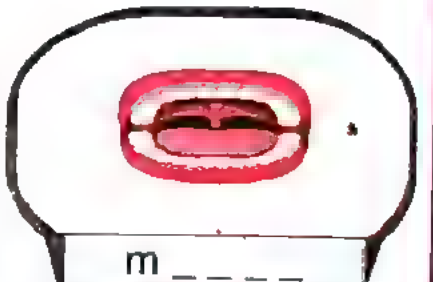
f \_ \_ \_



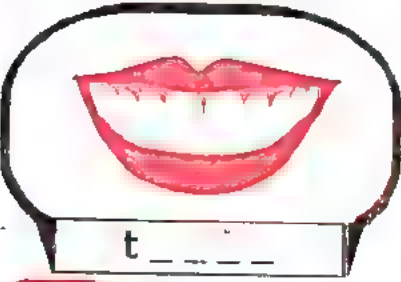
b \_ \_ \_



s \_ \_ \_



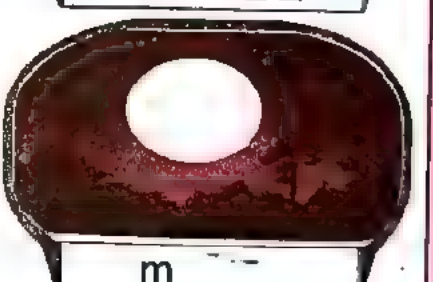
m \_ \_ \_



t \_ \_ \_



t \_ \_ \_



m \_ \_ \_

## 2 Choose the correct word(s): Vocabulary

- ① Our (muscles – skeleton) help us move our bones.
- ② (Bones – Skin) protect the soft organs inside our bodies.
- ③ The (lungs – heart) moves blood around the body.
- ④ Blood carries (stomach acid – oxygen and nutrients) around the body.
- ⑤ Our (teeth – skin) protects us from dirt, germs and the sun.
- ⑥ (Water – Oxygen) is added to the blood in our lungs.
- ⑦ (Arteries – Veins) carry blood with a lot of oxygen around the body.
- ⑧ Our (skull – jaw) protects our brain and eyes.
- ⑨ We need (veins – nutrients) to help us grow.
- ⑩ Your heart moves (vessels – blood) around your body.



## Choose the correct word(s): Structures

- ① She (am – is – are) going to help with the housework.
- ② We (am – is – are) going to visit our grandma.
- ③ I (am – is – are) going to read a story.
- ④ You (am – is – are) going to carry the box with me.
- ⑤ He (am – is – are) going to buy a new bike.
- ⑥ They (am – is – are) going to go for a walk.
- ⑦ She's (go – goes – going) to paint a picture.
- ⑧ He's (go – going – goes) to climb the rock.
- ⑨ They are going to (go – goes – going) swimming.
- ⑩ Are they going to (wear – wears – wearing) their pads?
- ⑪ (Is – Has – Does) she going to drink juice or soda?
- ⑫ I (never – usually – always) eat in the morning. I love breakfast.
- ⑬ Muscles are attached (at – to – for) bones.
- ⑭ Is she going to play tennis? - No, she (doesn't – is – isn't).
- ⑮ She isn't going to (go – goes – going) to the park.
- ⑯ Hani (wears – wore – is going to wear) his white T-shirt tomorrow.
- ⑰ (Are – Have – Do) you going to wear your helmet?

## Complete the sentences using the following words:

**saliva – tongue – arteries – skin – muscles – heart – stomach – skull – lungs – skeleton**

- ① The ..... moves blood around the body.
- ② Our ..... is our biggest organ.
- ③ In the ....., oxygen is added to the blood.
- ④ Blood with a lot of oxygen in it travels around the body in .....
- ⑤ We need ..... to move our bones.
- ⑥ Our ..... is all the bones in our body that keep us strong and help us move.
- ⑦ Our ..... protects our brain and our eyes.



- ⑧ We need ..... to help us chew.
- ⑨ We break down food in our .....
- ⑩ We chew food using our teeth, ..... and jaw.

## 5 Match "A" with "B":

| 'A'                                      | 'B'                                              |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| ① Stomach acid                           | a) the sun, as well as dirt and germs.           |
| ② Our skin protects us from .....        | b) oxygen and nutrients around the body.         |
| ③ Bones are hard, and they protect ..... | c) breaks down food in our stomach.              |
| ④ Blood carries .....                    | d) soft organs such our heart and lungs.         |
| ⑤ There isn't a lot of oxygen .....      | e) chew food, to move our jaw.                   |
| ⑥ We use muscles when we .....           | f) in our veins, because it is used in the body. |

## 6 Read and complete:

### Arteries – blood – blood vessels – nutrients – Veins

- ① ..... carry blood from the body to the heart.
- ② ..... carries oxygen and nutrients around your body.
- ③ We need ..... to help our bodies grow.
- ④ ..... carry blood away from the heart to the body.
- ⑤ Veins and arteries are types of .....

## 7 Read and circle:

- ① Blood is a (**gas** – liquid).
- ② Oxygen is a (**gas** – liquid).
- ③ Veins carry blood (**with** – **without**) oxygen.
- ④ Arteries carry blood (**with** – **without**) oxygen.



Write in the correct table:

foot – room – tool – good – root – wood

| Long 'oo' sound | Short 'oo' sound |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1 .....         | 1 .....          |
| 2 .....         | 2 .....          |
| 3 .....         | 3 .....          |

Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

- Yes, he's going to ride a horse. (Is)  
.....
- What are you going to do next Friday? (I .....)  
.....
- Are they going to drink soda? (No, .....)  
.....
- We're going to do exercise after school. (not)  
.....
- She plays with her friends. (tomorrow)  
.....
- No, I'm not going to watch TV. (Are)  
.....
- Are you going to have fish for dinner? (No, ...)  
.....
- Is she going to wear pads? (Yes, ...)  
.....
- Does he help at home? (going to)  
.....
- We go to Alexandria every year. (next week)  
.....



# 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: (2Ms)

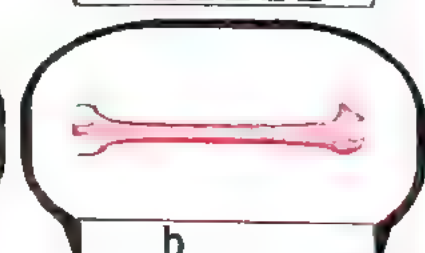
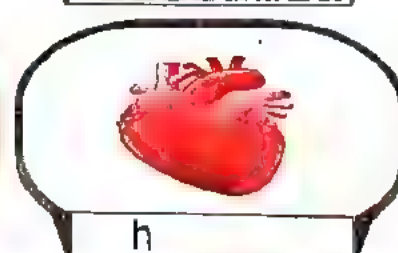
Hazem : Are you going to go to the park at the weekend?

Zeiad : .....

Hazem : ..... ?

Zeiad : I'm going to ride my bike there.

# 2 Supply the missing letters: (6Ms)



# 3 Choose the correct word in brackets: (8Ms)

- ① We are (go – goes – going) to go to the park after school.
- ② (Is – Has – Does) she going to go to bed early?
- ③ Your (lungs – brain – vein) controls all your body.
- ④ She (buy – is going to buy – buys) a new mobile next week.
- ⑤ Is he going to (climb – climbs – climbing) the mountain?
- ⑥ I (never – usually – always) draw pictures. I don't like drawing.
- ⑦ You should go to bed because you are very (positive – relaxed – tired).
- ⑧ Are they going to (has – have – had) cheese for breakfast?

# 4 Rewrite the following sentences doing as shown: (4Ms)

① We ride our bikes on Friday. (going to)

↳ .....

② He's going to go to the club. (not)

↳ .....



③ Yes, she's going to wear her sunglasses.

(Is)

④ What are you going to do tomorrow?

(I .....)

**Read the following passage and answer the questions below:**

(4Ms)

Tomorrow is a holiday. Fady is going to ride his bicycle in the morning. He's going to go the shops near his house to buy some things for his mother in the afternoon. His sister Farida is going to clean her bedroom in the morning. She's going to help her mum in the afternoon. In the evening, they are going to watch TV.

**A / " Answer the following questions:**

- ① What's Fady going to do in the morning? .....
- ② What's Farida going to do in the afternoon? .....

**B / " Choose the correct answer:**

- ③ This family is (three – four – five) persons.
- ④ They all are going to (read books – watch TV – go out) in the evening.

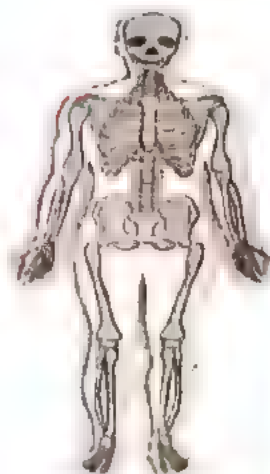
**Write a paragraph of four sentences on:**

(4Ms)

**Human body**

**Ideas to help you:**

human body – thirty two teeth – 206 bones –  
strong – hard – foods – good for you – bad



**Copy the following sentence:**

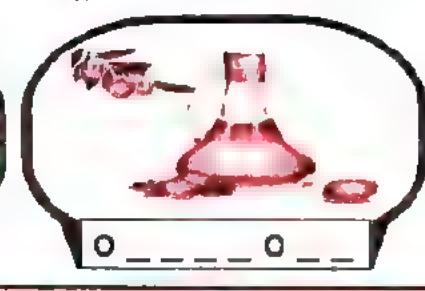
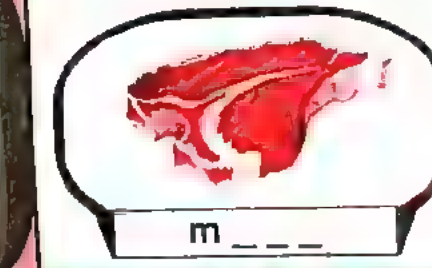
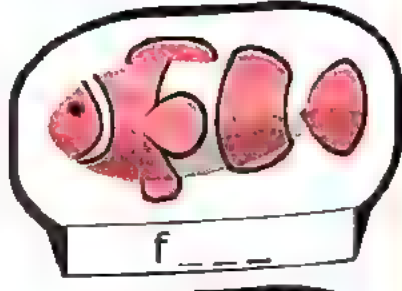
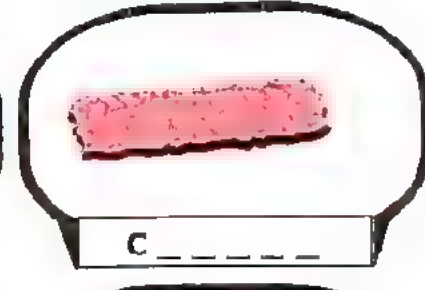
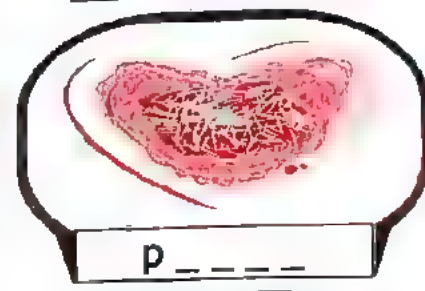
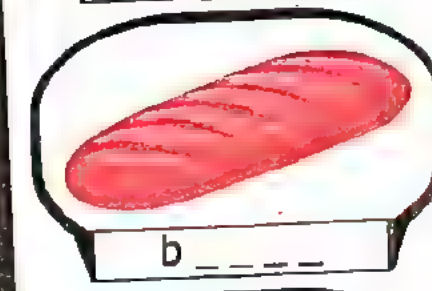
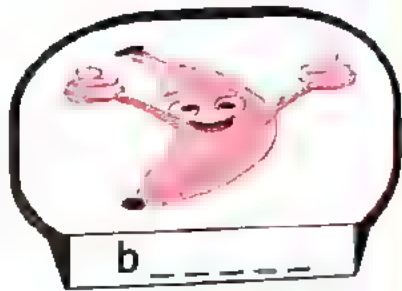
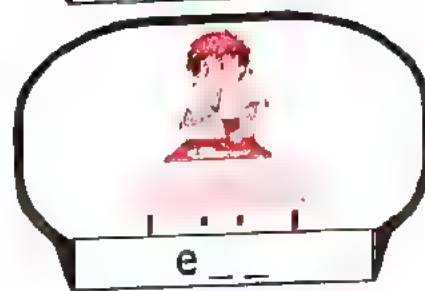
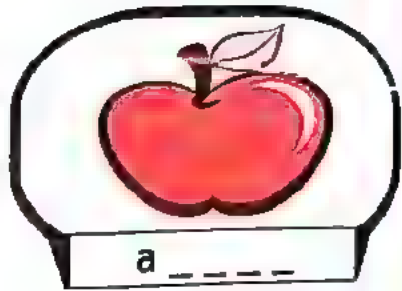
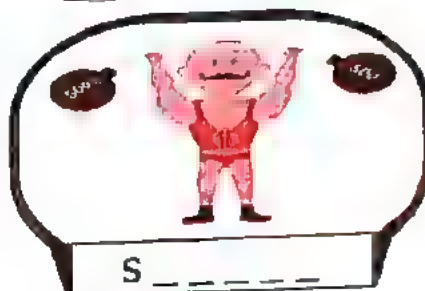
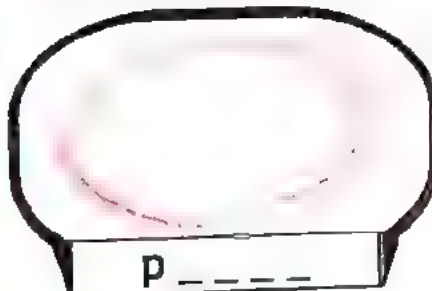
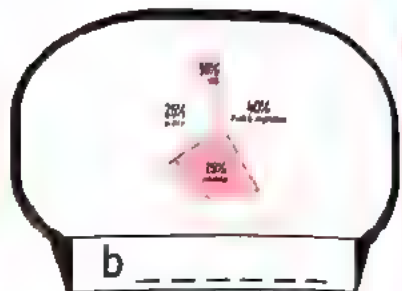
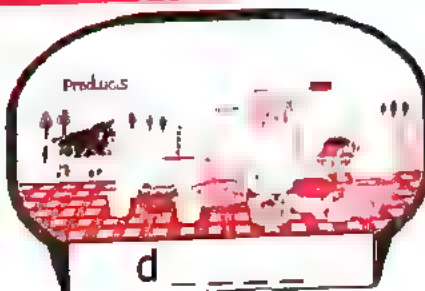
(2Ms)

Don't bark if you can't bite.

## Unit 3 Revision

1

Supply the missing letters:



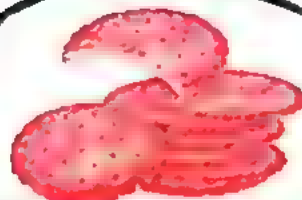




c \_ \_ \_



c \_ \_



b \_ \_ \_



a \_ \_ \_



p \_ \_ \_



w \_ \_ \_



r \_ \_ \_



t \_ \_



i \_ \_



c \_ \_ \_



c \_ \_ \_



s \_ \_ \_



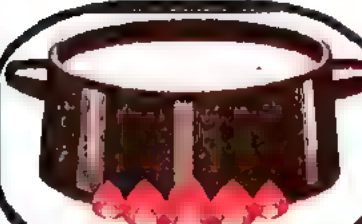
c \_ \_ b \_ \_



c \_ \_



j \_ \_



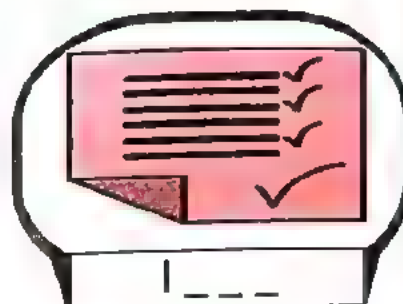
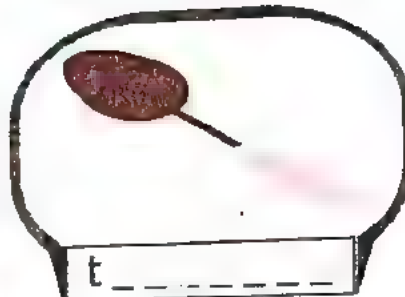
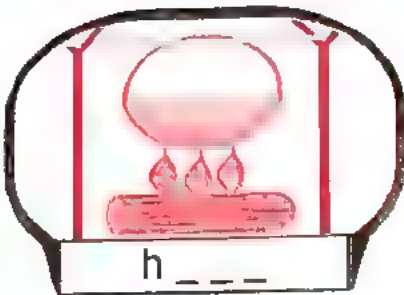
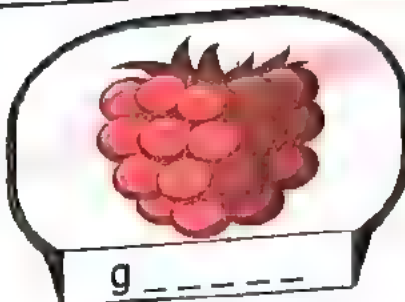
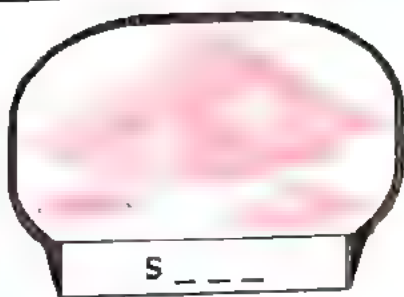
p \_ \_



f \_ \_ \_



m \_ \_ \_



## 2 Choose the correct word(s): Vocabulary

- ① Candies and cookies contain lots of (fiber – salt – sugar).
- ② (Sodium – Calories – Calcium) is the amount of energy in food.
- ③ If you don't drink enough water, you get (sweat – hydrated – dehydrated).
- ④ We should (preserve – taste – contain) food to keep it fresh and safe.
- ⑤ Cereal, bread and pasta contain (protein – vitamins – carbohydrates).
- ⑥ There are lots of (carbohydrates – fats – vitamins) in fruit.
- ⑦ There's (protein – fiber – calcium) in meat and fish.
- ⑧ There are (vitamins – fats – carbohydrates) in olive oil and butter.
- ⑨ We can get (carbohydrates – protein – vitamins) in bread, pasta and rice.
- ⑩ There's (fat – protein – fiber) in fruit.
- ⑪ Calcium is a (vitamin – mineral – protein).
- ⑫ We need (protein – fiber – vitamins) to help us grow.





- 13 When we (dry – smoke – store) fruit, we take out the water and keep the nutrients
- 14 (Protein – Fats – Sugar) helps us absorb some important vitamins.
- 15 Water is a (liquid – vessel – vitamin).
- 16 (Blood – Heart – Brain) carries oxygen and nutrients around the body.
- 17 (Vitamins – Carbohydrates – Fiber) give us energy.
- 18 Water helps your body to get rid of (toxins – blood – food).
- 19 We lose water when we (sweet – eat – sweat).
- 20 The (fiber – salt – sugar) we get in food is sodium mixed with other things.
- 21 We eat food, and it breaks down into nutrients in our (lungs – brain – stomach).
- 22 If we don't (eat – buy – store) food properly, it can go bad.
- 23 Zeer pots, cans and jars are (pans – spoons – containers).

## **B Choose the correct word(s): Vocabulary**

- 1 There are (vitamins – proteins) and fiber in fruit and vegetables.
- 2 (Carbohydrates – Minerals) give us energy.
- 3 (Sugar – Protein) helps our bodies grow.
- 4 Calcium is good for (eyes – bones), heart and muscles.
- 5 We need healthy fats in some (oils – minerals).
- 6 There is sugar in (fish – cake), biscuits and soda.
- 7 We shouldn't eat or drink too much (vitamins – sugar).

## **Read and circle:**

Sugar is nice but it is bad for our **teeth** / **hair**. Sugar is also bad for our **lungs** / **heart**. It stops our arteries working well. When we get energy from sugar it lasts a **short** / **long** time. Then we want more! When we get energy from carbohydrates, it lasts a **short** / **long** time. Sugar can be bad for our mood. If we have **too little** / **too much** sugar, it can make our brain confused. We can feel **worried** / **happy** and anxious.

### 5 Choose the correct word(s): Structures

- ① You (should – shouldn't – can't) have a healthy diet.
- ② She shouldn't (drink – drinks – drinking) lots of sweet drinks.
- ③ Should I sleep for only four hours? - No, (you should – you shouldn't – I shouldn't).
- ④ You (should – shouldn't) eat healthy food.
- ⑤ You (should – shouldn't) eat cookies every day.
- ⑥ Should he (go – goes – going) to bed early?
- ⑦ She shouldn't (eat – eats – eating) or drink a lot of sugar.
- ⑧ Should I eat candies every day? - No, (I shouldn't – you shouldn't – you should).
- ⑨ You should (eat – drink) enough water.
- ⑩ (Is – Should – Has) he sleep eight hours?

### 6 Complete the sentences using:

**should – shouldn't**

- ① You ..... eat a healthy lunch every day.
- ② You ..... wear a helmet when you ride a bike.
- ③ You ..... eat candy every day.
- ④ You ..... ride you skateboard on a road.

### 7 Read and complete. Use should shouldn't:

Youssef wants to be in the school running team. He goes running once a week. He sometimes skips breakfast but he always eats lunch. He loves snacks. He likes candies and drinking sodas. What should he do to get into the school running team?

- ① He ..... every day.
- ② ..... breakfast.
- ③ ..... candies.
- ④ ..... fruit and vegetables.
- ⑤ ..... a lot of sodas.
- ⑥ ..... 1.5 liters of water every day.



## Do the quiz:

- 1 How do plants get water?  
a) From the soil.                      b) From the air.
- 2 How much of our blood is made up of water?  
a) 82%                                      b) 62%
- 3 How much of our brain is made up of water?  
a) 45%                                      b) 75%
- 4 What happens if you are dehydrated?  
a) You feel tired and you can't think.      b) You can't walk or talk.
- 5 How much water should children drink every day?  
a) 0.5 liters                              b) 1.5 liters

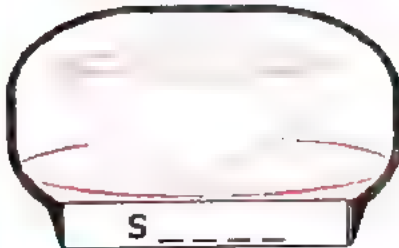
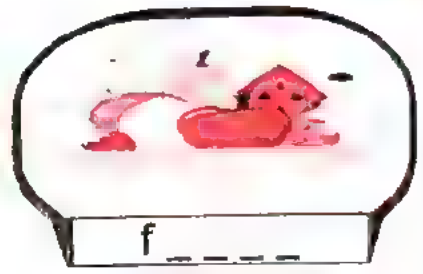
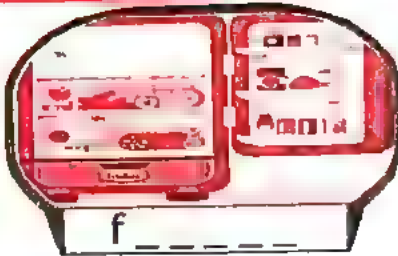
## Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

- 1 Drinking pure water is important. (should)  
.....
- 2 No, you shouldn't eat unhealthy food. (Should)  
.....
- 3 Having sweet snacks is bad for you. (shouldn't)  
.....
- 4 Should I eat lots of carbohydrates? (No, .....)  
.....
- 5 Drinking soda isn't good for your body. (shouldn't)  
.....
- 6 You should never be dehydrated. (should always)  
.....
- 7 Yes, I should drink enough water. (Should)  
.....
- 8 You should have a healthy body. (unhealthy)  
.....
- 9 Making your body strong is very important. (should)  
.....
- 10 Should you eat lots of cakes? (No, .....)  
.....

# 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: (2Ms)

Shady : ..... ?  
 Faris : I always get up at seven o'clock.  
 Shady : What do you have for breakfast?  
 Faris : .....

# 2 Supply the missing letters: (6Ms)



# 3 Choose the correct word in brackets: (8Ms)

- (Fiber – Calcium – Cereal) is good for our bones.
- We (should – shouldn't – can't) have a healthy diet.
- Milk and cheese are (daily – diary – dairy) foods.
- You shouldn't (drinks – drinking – drink) too much soda.
- When you are (sweat – hydrated – dehydrated), it means you are getting enough water.
- Cakes, biscuits and soda contain (sugar – protein – fiber).
- Should I drink water? - Yes, (I should – you shouldn't – you should).
- Plants get water from the (air – sun – soil) in their roots.

# 4 Rewrite the following sentences doing as shown: (4Ms)

- Doing exercise is good for your body. (should)  
 .....  
 ⤴
- Should I eat a healthy diet? (Yes, .....)  
 .....  
 ⤴



## Revision Unit (3)

- 3 Sleeping for only five hours is unhealthy. (shouldn't)
- 4 No, I shouldn't drink lots of sweet drinks. (Should)

**Read the following passage and answer the questions below: (4Ms)**

Every Thursday, my mother goes shopping. My sister Riham sometimes goes with her. There are a lot of vegetables and fruits in the market. My mother buys tomatoes, peas, potatoes and lettuce. She also buys bananas, apples and strawberries. She buys my sister an ice cream and buys me a bottle of orange juice.

**Answer the following questions:**

- 1 When does the mother go to the market? .....
- 2 What vegetables does she buy? .....

**Choose the correct answer:**

- 3 Riham likes (sweets – cakes – ice cream).
- 4 My mother buys me (oranges – ice cream – juice).

**Write a paragraph of four sentences on:**

(4Ms)

**"The healthy diet"**

sweets – crisps – biscuits – chocolate – soda  
– meat – fish – vegetables – fruit – water



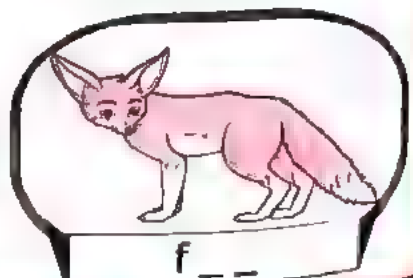
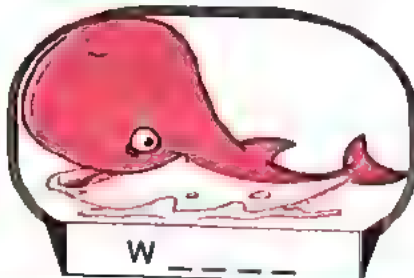
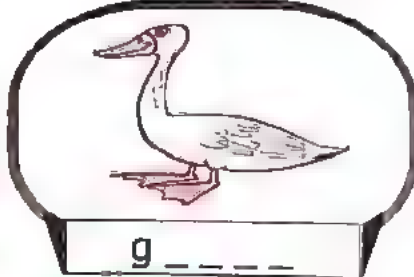
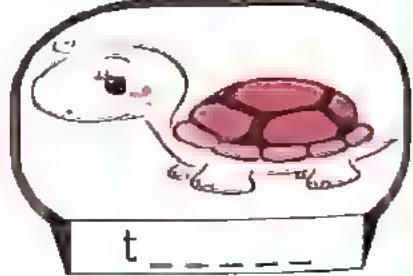
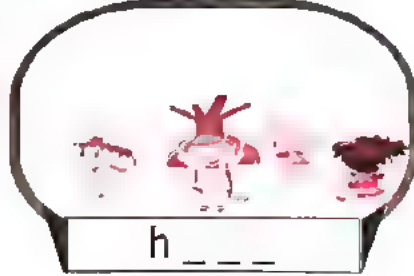
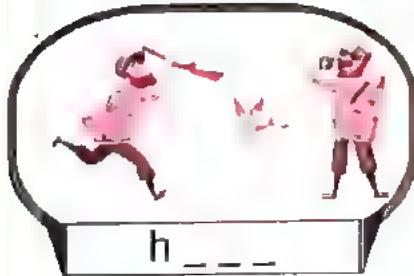
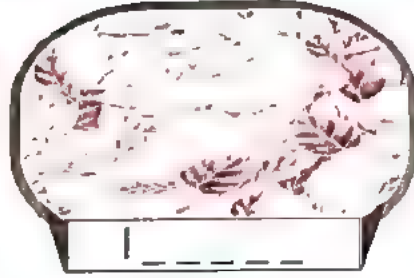
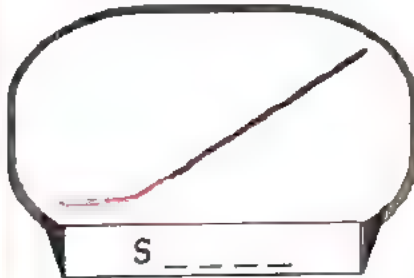
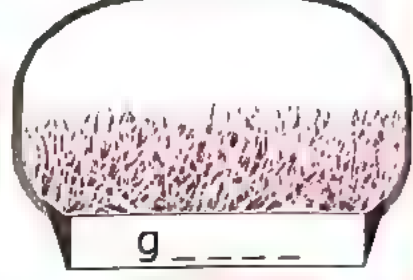
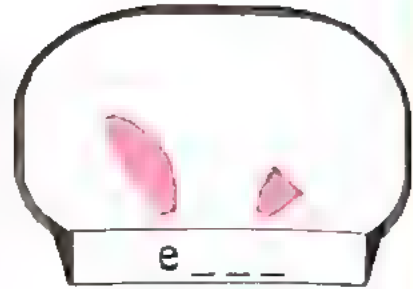
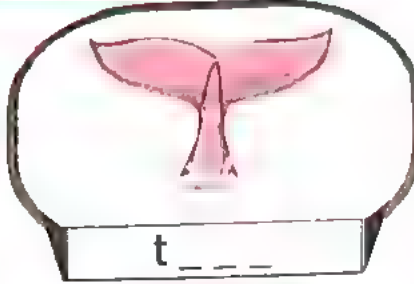
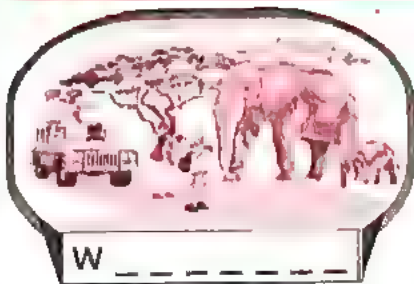
**Copy the following sentence:**

(2Ms)

Variety is the spice of life.

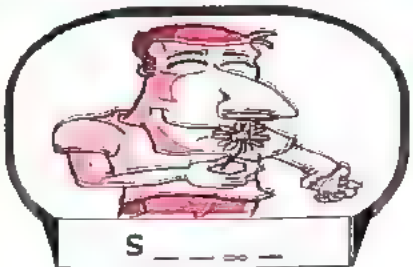
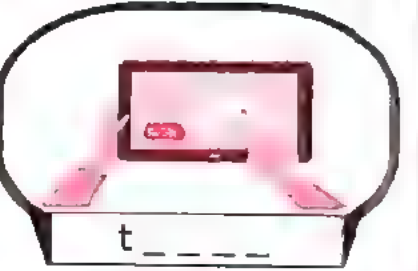
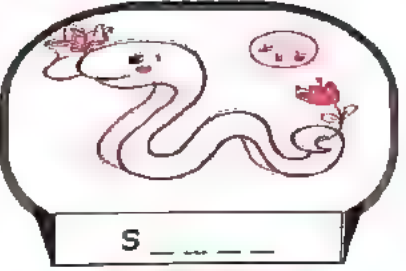
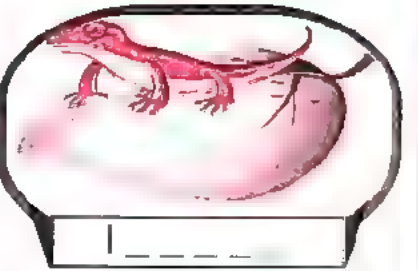
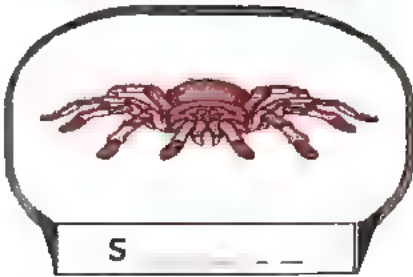
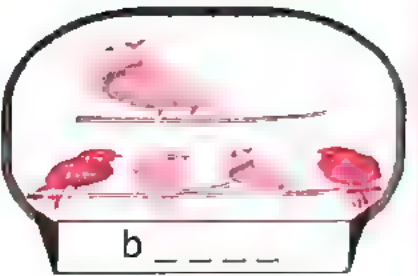
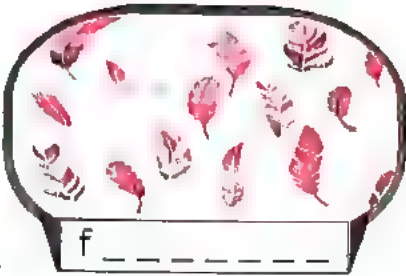
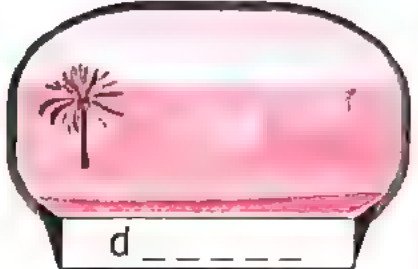
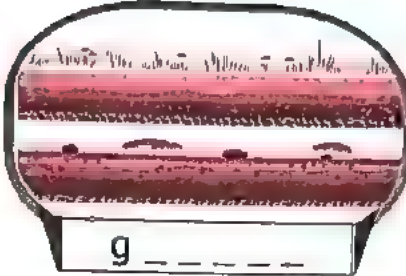
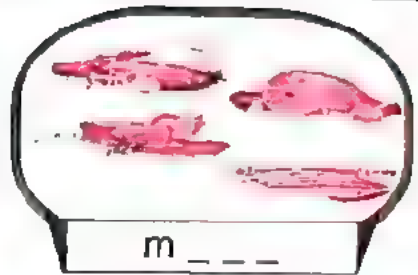
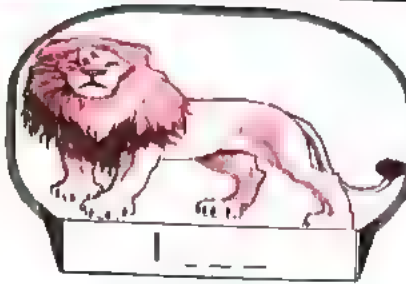
# Unit 4 Revision

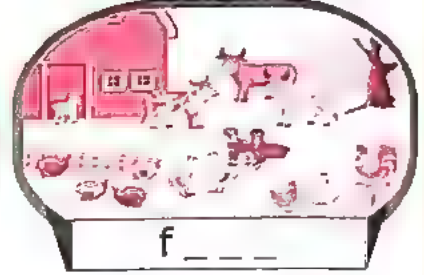
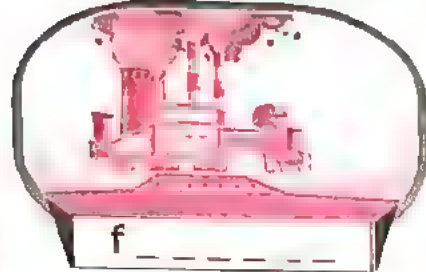
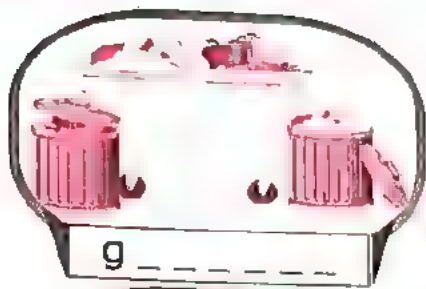
Supply the missing letters:





# Revision Unit(4)





## 2 Match "A" with "B":

| 'A'          | 'B'                                          |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------|
| 1 sea lion   | a) It takes shelter under rocks in rivers.   |
| 2 crayfish   | b) It's long and thin and doesn't have legs. |
| 3 cobra      | c) It lives in a hole in a tree.             |
| 4 sloth      | d) It digs a burrow and lives in the desert. |
| 5 owl        | e) It sleeps a lot and moves very slowly.    |
| 6 fennec fox | f) It lives in the sea.                      |

## 3 Complete the sentences using the following words:

wetland – equator – temperate zone – polar zone –  
rainforest – desert

- 1 A place with lots of trees and animals. It rains a lot. ....
- 2 It is hot here and there isn't a lot of rain. ....
- 3 An imaginary line around the center of the Earth. ....
- 4 This place is wet all the time. It's near a sea or river. ....



- ⑤ A very cold place. There aren't any trees, but there is snow and ice. ....
- ⑥ A place where there is a lot of rain in fall and winter. There is less in spring and summer. ....

**Read and circle:**

A habitat is a place with a particular kind of climate and landscape. There is **rain** / **snow** and ice in polar habitat. There **aren't any** / **are lots of** trees and the plants are small. Animals take shelter in **burrows** / **nests**.

Rainforests are **cold** / **warm** and wet places. They are in tropical parts of the world. The trees grow a lot of fruit for animals to eat. Wetland habitats are near the sea or **mountain** / **rivers**. A swamp is a wetland habitat with lots of **people** / **trees**. Animals hide under the tree roots in the water.

**Read and choose:**

- ① Which is hotter?  
**a. Equator** **b. North Pole**
- ② Which area doesn't get much sunshine?  
**a. South Pole** **b. Equator**
- ③ What habitat is near the equator?  
**a. Polar** **b. Grassland**
- ④ Which habitats are in Egypt?  
**a. Wetland and Desert** **b. Rainforest and Polar**

**Choose the correct word(s): Vocabulary**

- ① The (South Pole – North Pole – equator) is the point at the furthest north of the world.
- ② Lions and cheetahs (hunt – grow – hide) other animals for food.
- ③ The (cheetah – fennec fox – sloth) moves very slowly.
- ④ The (swamp – tropical – polar) parts of the world are very hot.
- ⑤ (Macaw – Cobra – Spider) is a very big snake.

- ⑥ (Polar – Tropical – Swamp) parts are very cold.
- ⑦ (Insects – Frogs – Butterflies) are beautiful birds.
- ⑧ (South Pole – North Pole – Equator) is an imaginary line all around the middle of the Earth.
- ⑨ (Lizards – Foxes – Frogs) can crawl.
- ⑩ (Building – Pollution – Animal) is bad for the environment.
- ⑪ Flood is a natural (fire – volcano – disaster).
- ⑫ (Polar parts – Tropical parts – Swams) are very wet.

### Choose the correct word(s): Structures

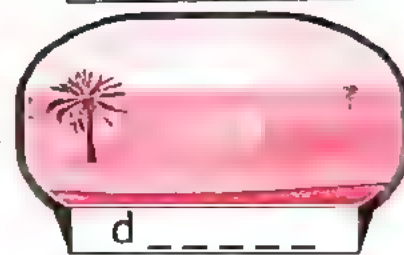
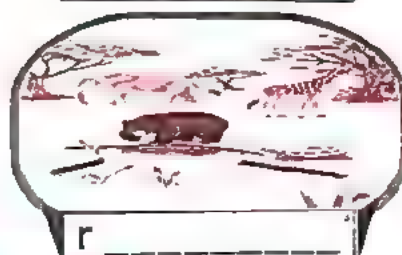
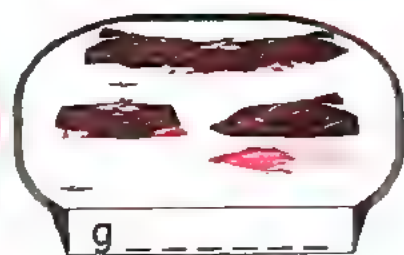
- ① I (might – will – might not) go out. It's very cold outside.
- ② She (might – might not – can't) come with us to the zoo. She likes animals.
- ③ He might (eats – eat – ate) chicken for dinner.
- ④ (Did – Were – Was) it a spider monkey? \_ No. It had big ears.
- ⑤ I (might – might not) eat a sandwich. I'm hungry.
- ⑥ (Was – Were – Are) it a spider monkey?
- ⑦ She (might – might not) come to the party. She wants to see her friends.
- ⑧ The animal that I saw yesterday (has – had – have) big ears.
- ⑨ It might not (climbed – climbs – climb) trees.
- ⑩ Let's (looked – looks – look) on the wildlife park webcam.
- ⑪ He (might – might not) watch TV tonight. He has lots of homework to do.
- ⑫ The sloth (moves – move – moved) slowly yesterday.
- ⑬ The animal might (building – builds – build) a nest.
- ⑭ (Is – Was – Were) your school day great yesterday?
- ⑮ Fady (might – might not) be able to swim. He doesn't like swimming.
- ⑯ I (see – seeing – saw) a macaw in the tree yesterday.
- ⑰ Was it a sea lion? \_ No, it (was – isn't – wasn't).
- ⑱ It might not (digs – dig – digging) burrows.



Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: (2Ms)

Ramy : .....?  
 Adel : No, I wasn't at school yesterday.  
 Ramy : What did you do?  
 Adel : .....

Supply the missing letters: (6Ms)



Choose the correct word in brackets: (8Ms)

- ① We (might – might not – can) go out today. It's very cold today.
- ② The (South Pole – North Pole – equator) is the point at the furthest south of the world.
- ③ I (go – goes – went) to the wildlife park yesterday.
- ④ (Macaw – Cobra – Spider) is a colorful bird.
- ⑤ Birds build (leaves – nests – burrows) in trees.
- ⑥ He (might – might not – can't) drink his tea. It's very hot.
- ⑦ (Volcanoes – Flood – Rain) erupt from time to time.
- ⑧ It might (live – lives – lived) in a polar area.

Rewrite the following sentences doing as shown: (4Ms)

① No, it wasn't a fennec fox. (Was)

.....

② I loved seeing the chimpanzees. (What)

.....

3 What might you do tomorrow?

(I .....)



4 He might come with us.

(not)



**Read the following passage and answer the questions below: (4Ms)**

We sometimes visit the zoo in summer. We see the hippo. It's big. It has got small ears and a short tail. It likes water. The monkey is a funny animal. It can run and jump. It likes bananas. It lives in trees. It's small and has got a long tail.

**Answer the following questions:**

1 When do you sometimes visit the zoo? .....

2 What does the hippo like? .....

**Choose the correct answer:**

3 The hippo is (short – small – big).

4 The monkey likes (strawberries – apples – bananas).

**Write a paragraph of four sentences on: (4Ms)**

**"The lion"**

**Words to help you:**

Lion – wild animal – live – forest – eat other small animals – dangerous – can see – zoo



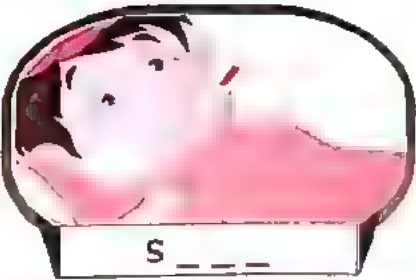
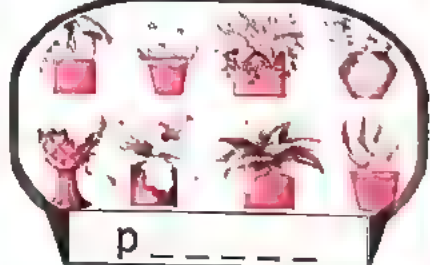
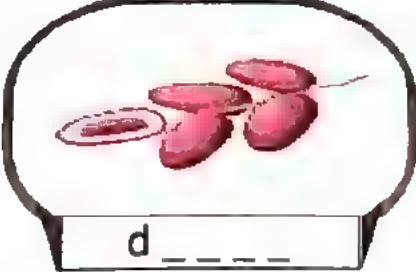
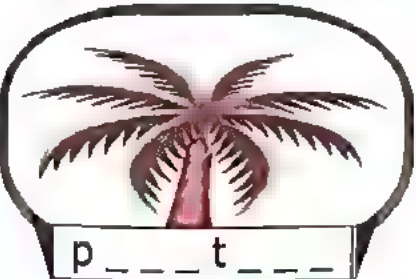
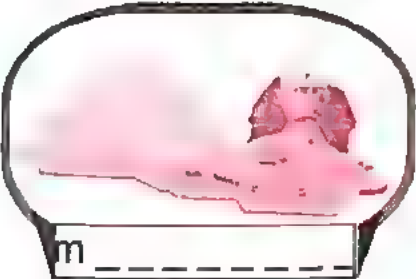
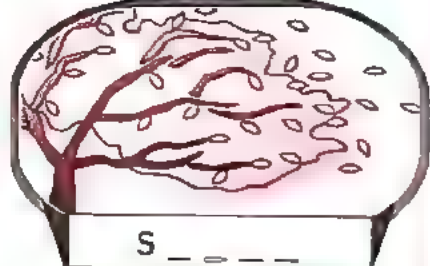
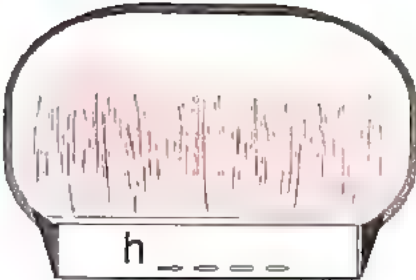
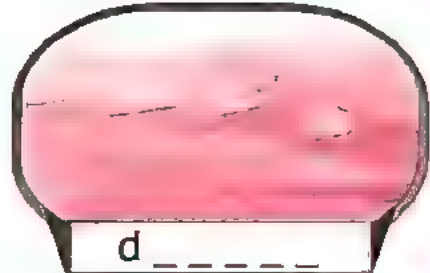
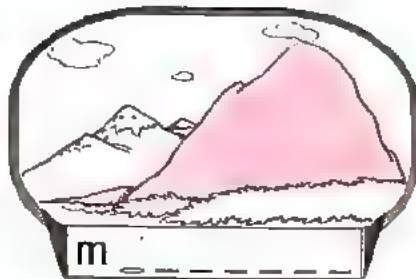
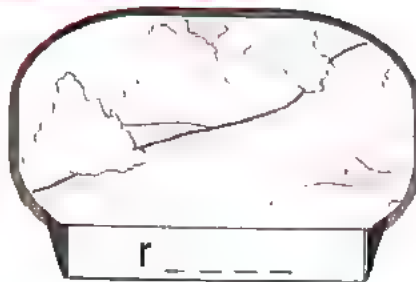
**Copy the following sentence in your best handwriting: (2Ms)**

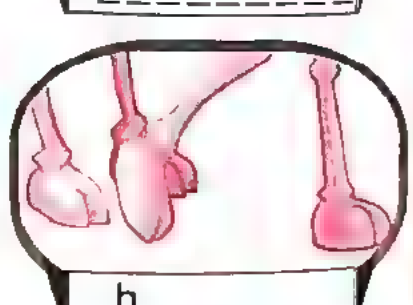
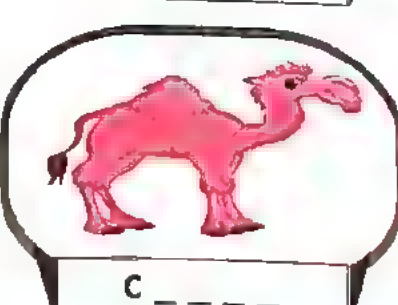
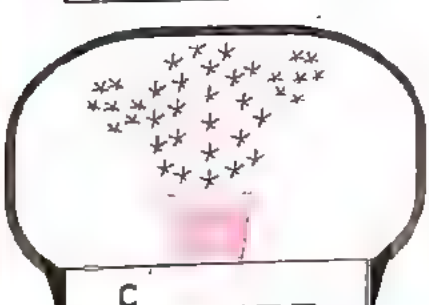
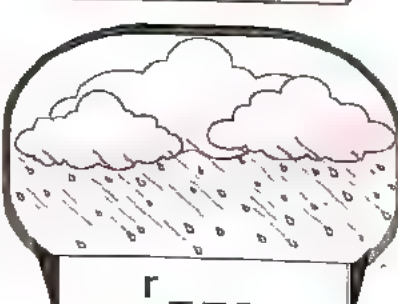
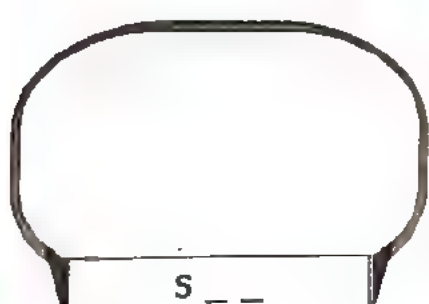
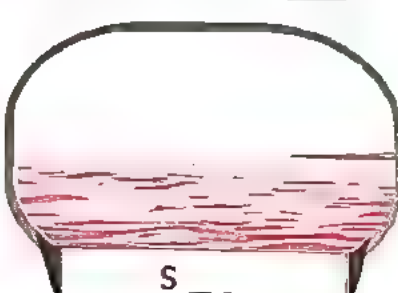
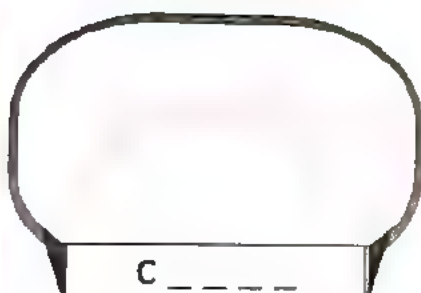
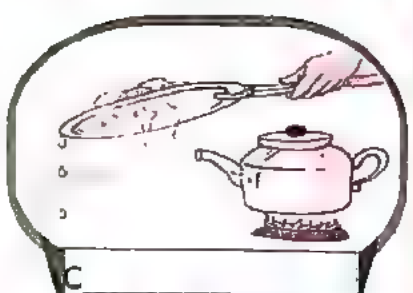
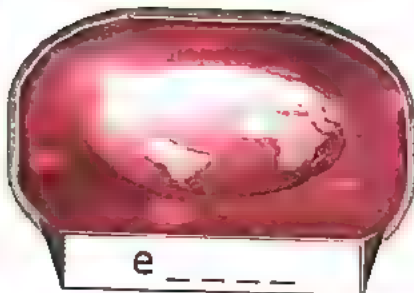
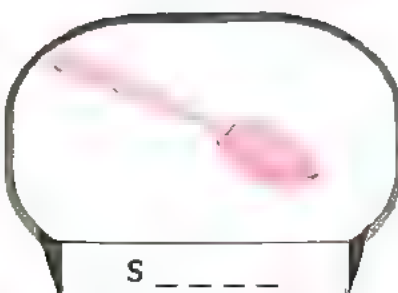
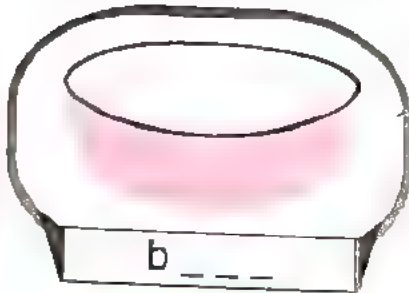
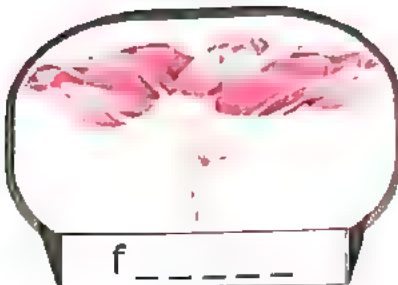
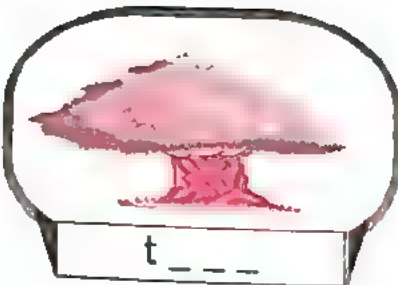
Sometimes silence expresses better than talking.

\_\_\_\_\_

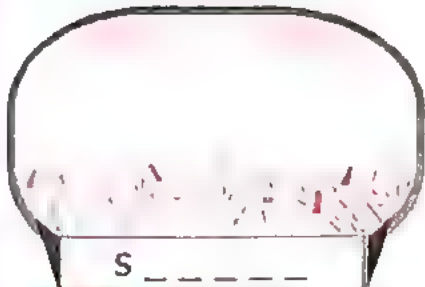
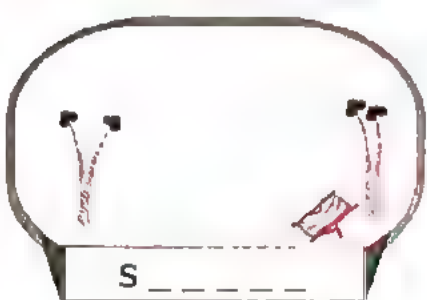
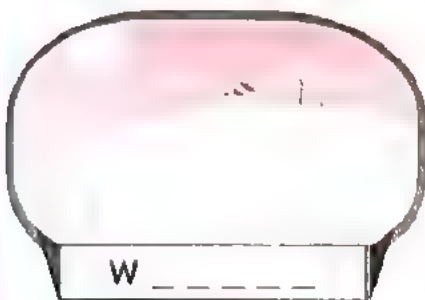
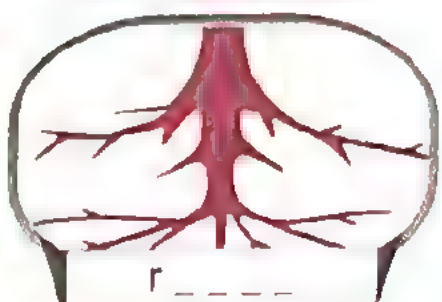
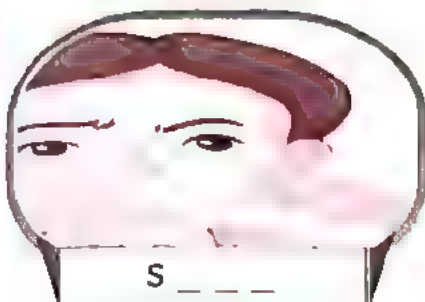
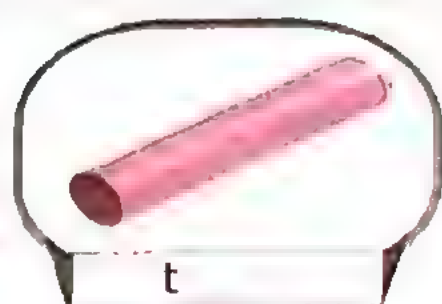
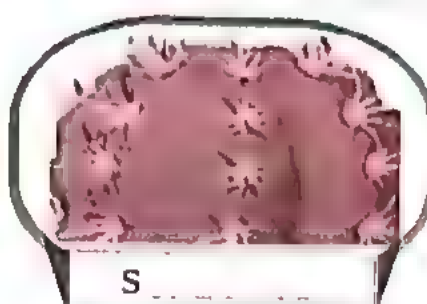
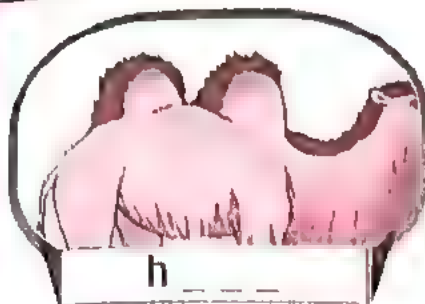


Supply the missing letters:









## 2 Choose the correct word(s): Vocabulary

- ① Camels have (hunted – escaped – adapted) to survive very well in the desert.
- ② We can get fresh water in the (sea – ocean – river).
- ③ Water vapor (condenses – evaporates – flows) into drops of water.
- ④ All animals need (surface – beaker – shelter) for protection and keeping safe.
- ⑤ Water comes up to the surface of the ground in a (cloud – precipitation – spring).
- ⑥ Seas have (salt – fresh – dirty) water.
- ⑦ Camels have wide (hooves – humps – eyes) to walk on sand.
- ⑧ The (mountain – oasis – ground) is a place in the desert where there's water.
- ⑨ You can put (acacia – tamarisk – spearmint) in food or drink.

- ⑩ Heat from the sun makes water start to (evaporate – condense – freeze).
- ⑪ Don't go out when there's a (sun – light – sandstorm).
- ⑫ Vapor (evaporates – condenses – heats) when it starts to cool.
- ⑬ (Deserts – Lakes – Rivers) are very hot and dry.
- ⑭ All animals want to (escape – survive – runoff) in their habitat.
- ⑮ Doctors give (medicine – plants – dates) to sick people.
- ⑯ (Cactus – Basil – Spearmint) is a desert plant.
- ⑰ There are lots of dates in the (acacia – tamarisk – palm) tree.
- ⑱ The (farmer – doctor – teacher) grows plants and keeps animals.
- ⑲ We can sit in the (leaves – shade – wood) of a tree when it's hot.
- ⑳ Camels can store fat and nutrients in their (hooves – humps – spearmint).
- ㉑ They have thick (spines – tubes – fur) to keep them warm at night.

## B Choose the correct word(s): Structures

- ① Dalia (has – have) seen a butterfly.
- ② I (has – have) drawn a picture.
- ③ They (has – have) ridden their bikes.
- ④ He (has – have) played football.
- ⑤ We (has – have) won a medal.
- ⑥ The cat (has – have) chased a mouse.
- ⑦ You (has – have) helped me a lot. Thank you.
- ⑧ (Has – Have – Are) you ever cooked for your family?
- ⑨ I have (visiting – visit – visited) an oasis with my family three times.
- ⑩ People have (live – lives – lived) there for thousands of years.
- ⑪ Have you ever visited Siwa? - No, I (have – hasn't – haven't).
- ⑫ I've (ever – never – already) ridden a camel. I'm afraid of them.
- ⑬ They've (took – taken – take) lots of photos.
- ⑭ People (lives – are living – have lived) there for thousands of years.
- ⑮ (Has – Have – Did) you ever climbed a tree?
- ⑯ Have you ever (swum – swim – swam) in a lake?





## Correct the verbs as in the example:

- ① I ..... have visited (visit) ..... the pyramids.
- ② He ..... (not eat) dates.
- ③ She ..... (travel) on the River Nile.
- ④ They ..... (not see) a spring.
- ⑤ I ..... (sleep) in the desert.

## Look and write as in the example:

- ① you – ever eat – figs (✓)  
..... Have you ever eaten figs? - Yes, I have. ....
- ② he – ever climb – a tower (✗)  
.....
- ③ she – ever swim – in the sea (✓)  
.....
- ④ they – ever fly – in a helicopter (✗)  
.....
- ⑤ you – ever see – a cobra (✗)  
.....
- ⑥ it – ever rain – in the desert (✓)  
.....

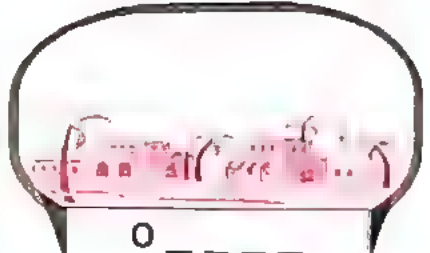
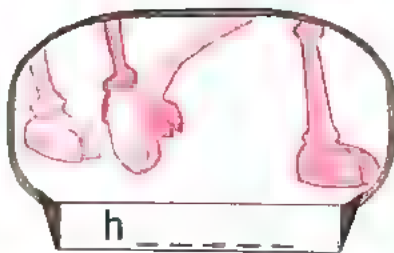
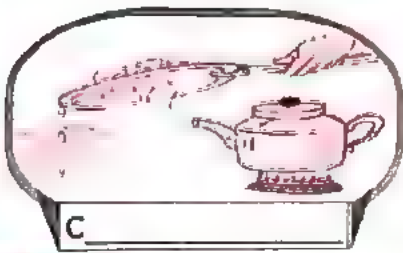
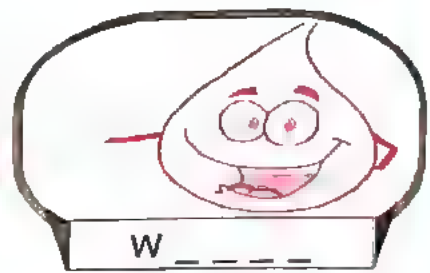
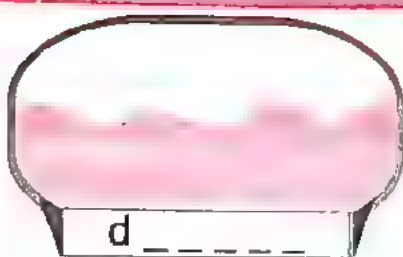
## Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

- ① Yes, I have eaten dates. (Have)  
.....
- ② He saw lots of beautiful birds. (seen)  
.....
- ③ Have you ever planted a tree? (No, .....)  
.....
- ④ She gave me her pen. (has)  
.....
- ⑤ They saw lots of interesting places. (seen)  
.....
- ⑥ Yes, I've tried Siwan food. (Have)  
.....
- ⑦ Have you ever visited Luxor and Aswan? (Yes, .....)  
.....
- ⑧ I gave my mum a present. (Have)  
.....

# 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: (2Ms)

- Adel : How much water do you drink every day?  
 Ali : .....  
 Adel : Where can we get fresh water?  
 Ali : .....

## 2 Supply the missing letters: (6Ms)



## 3 Choose the correct word in brackets: (8Ms)

- We can get water to drink at the (sea – ocean – spring) over there.
- We have (see – saw – seen) a big lake.
- Spearmint and basil are different (dates – herbs – fruit).
- Have you (ever – never – since) tried this?
- We can get fresh water in (seas – rivers – oceans).
- She's (eat – eaten – ate) all her sandwiches.
- (Condensation – Evaporation – Precipitation) is when water falls from the clouds as rain, snow, or hail.
- I've (ever – never – already) ridden a skateboard. I can't ride it.

## 4 Rewrite the following sentences doing as shown: (4Ms)

- 1 No, I've never seen a snake.



(Have)

- 2 He took lots of sandwiches.



(taken)



3 Have you ever climbed a mountain? (No, .....)



4 She swam in the swimming pool. (has)



**Read the following passage and answer the questions below: (4Ms)**

There are four seasons in the year. I like winter and spring. It rains in winter. The rain makes things beautiful. In spring, you can see flowers in gardens. But, in summer, the weather is very hot. The sun shines all day. And in fall, it's often cool and trees lose their leaves in fall.

**Answer the following questions:**

1 What's the weather like in summer? .....

2 When do trees lose their leaves? .....

**Choose the correct answer:**

3 There are four (months – seasons – weeks) in the year.

4 It rains in (spring – fall – winter).

**Write a paragraph of four sentences on: (4Ms)**

**"The camel"**

**Words to help you:**

camels – big – perfect – desert life – eyelashes  
– long noses – keep out sand – wide feet –  
walk – sand – humps – food – water



**Copy the following sentence:**

**(2Ms)**

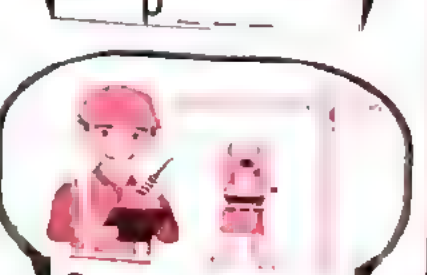
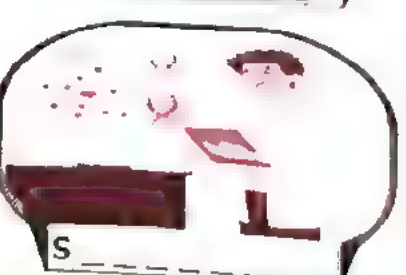
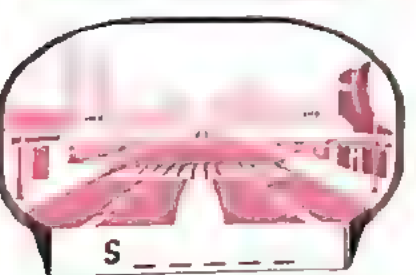
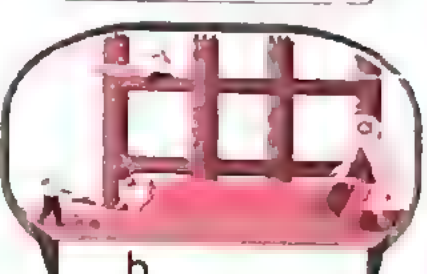
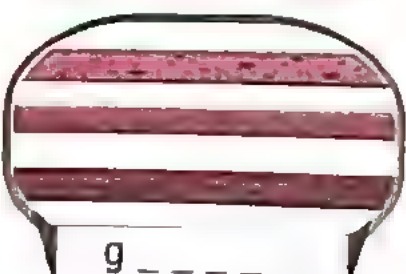
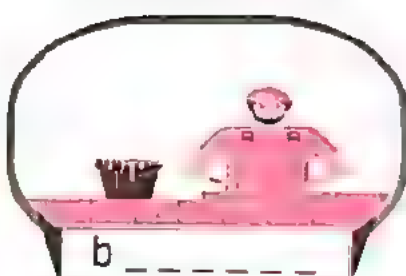
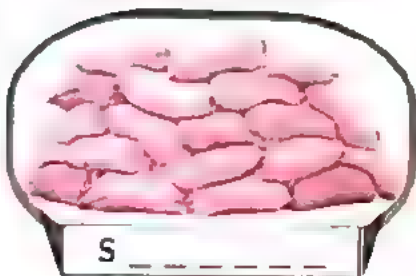
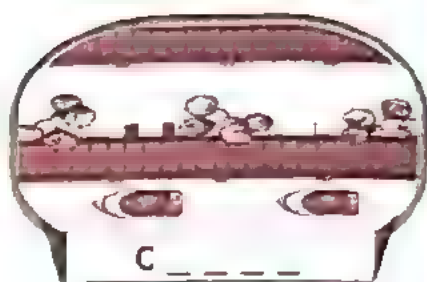
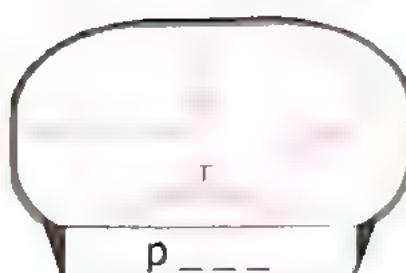
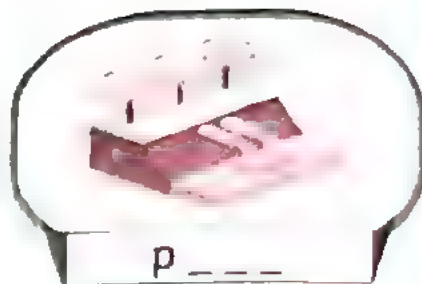
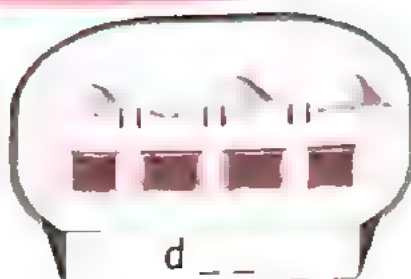
Just do your best and God will do the rest.

\_\_\_\_\_

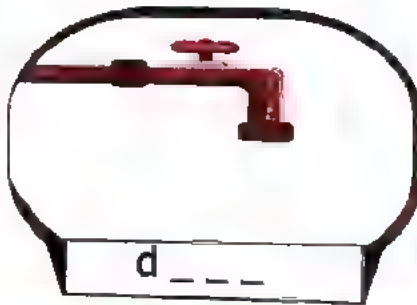
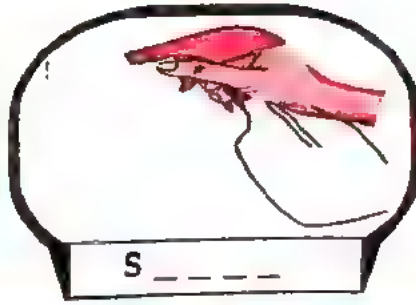
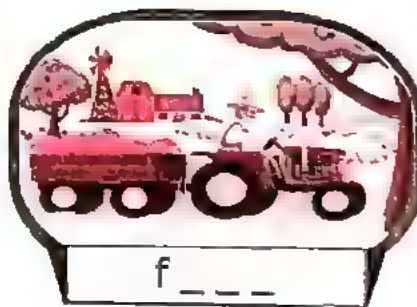
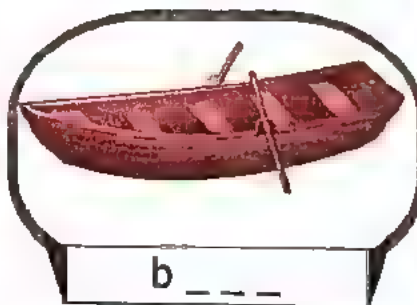
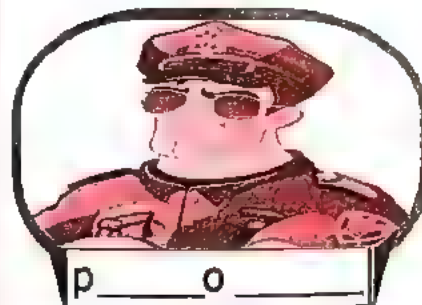
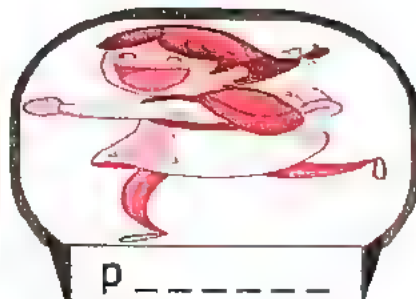
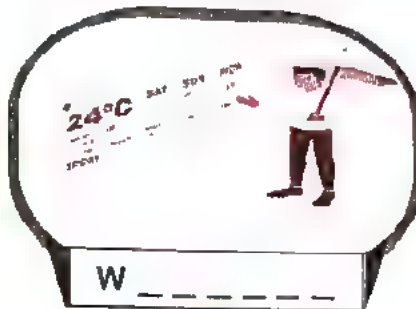
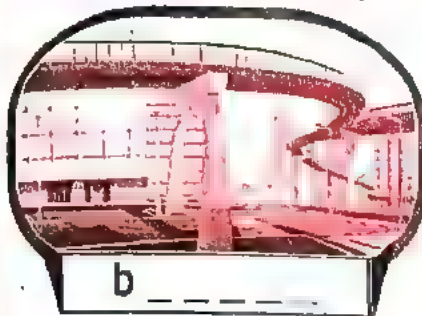
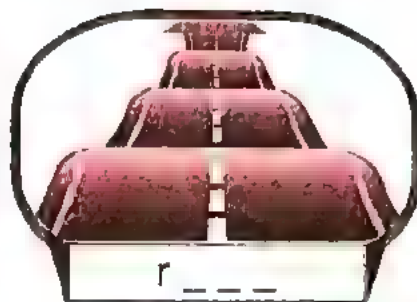
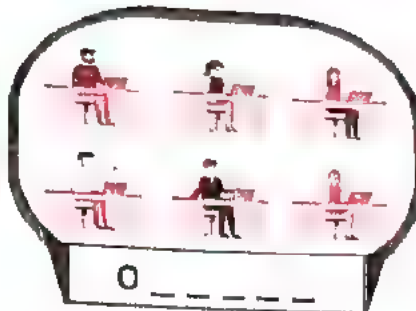
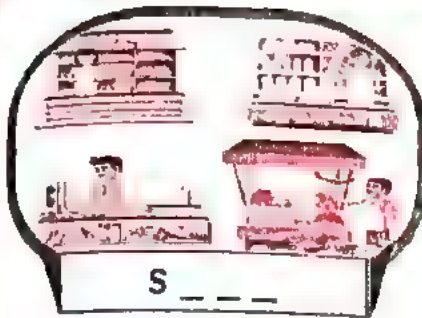
\_\_\_\_\_

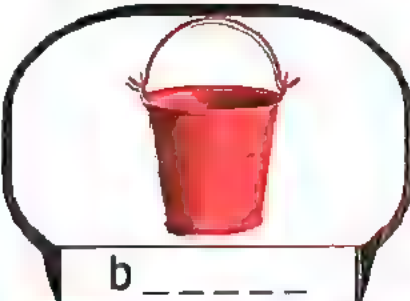
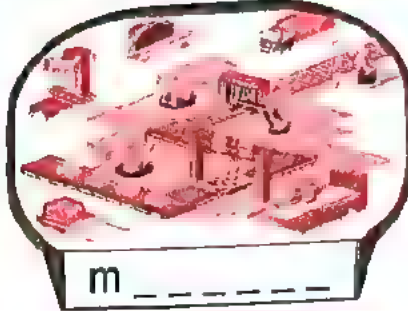
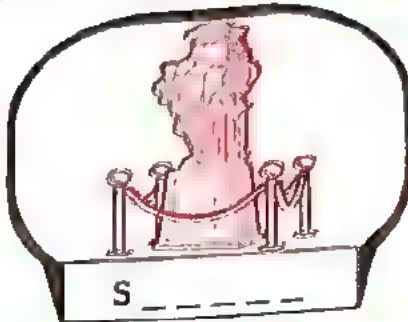
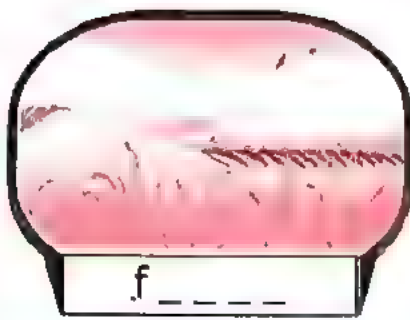
Unit 6 Revision

Supply the missing letters:









2

## Choose the correct word(s): Vocabulary

- ① The (**barrier** – Lake Nasser – High Dam) controls the water of the Nile in Egypt.
- ② People have used (**waterwheels** – sandbags – **drains**) to help with irrigation.
- ③ There was a (**thunderstorm** – flood – volcano) in Egypt. Water filled all streets and roads.
- ④ He's a (**volunteer** – firefighter – police officer). He works without getting paid.
- ⑤ Flood water can wash away roads or make bridges and homes (**move** – warn – collapse).
- ⑥ We can find water in (**walls** – wells – wills).
- ⑦ There are (**pipes** – barriers – sandbags) under the ground for water to move through.
- ⑧ It's important for engineers and scientists to find ways to (**damage** – protect – ruin) everyone from floods.
- ⑨ There are (**drains** – pumps – canals) in the streets for rainwater to go down.



- ⑩ Meteorologists – Engineers – Firefighters) are people who study the weather.
- ⑪ A (dam – drain – flood) stops water in a river.
- ⑫ Meteorologists (collapse – damage – warn) people if there is a flood.
- ⑬ You can use a (dam – shadoof – pump) to take water out of a building in a flood.
- ⑭ People built (aqueducts – dams – barriers) to move water from wells or rivers into cities.
- ⑮ I volunteer to help my community when there is a/an (party – emergency – situation).
- ⑯ A (pump – shadoof – canal) is a river that people build, so they can move water to where they need it.
- ⑰ They tried to (rescue – ruin – damage) the citizens from the flood water.
- ⑱ In a flood, people can put up a (pipe – barrier – pump) to stop water in the street.
- ⑲ People put (sandbags – canals – dam) in front of houses and buildings to keep water out.
- ⑳ (Irrigation – Hydroponics – Desalination) means taking the salt out of sea water to get fresh water.

**B**

**Read and complete:**

**irrigation – rivers – waterwheel**

Waterwheels are in ..... The moving water makes the ..... go around. This creates power. People used waterwheels to help with ..... to water their plants.

**canal – citadel – tower**

This is the Cairo Citadel Aqueduct. Water ran from a well into a ..... on top of a wall. There was a well and six waterwheels inside a tall ..... Oxen made the wheels go around. Then water could move up inside the tower. When water got to the top of the tower, it went down the aqueduct to the .....

electricity – turbines

The High Dam is the biggest dam in the world. .... in the dam create hydroelectric power. This power creates .....

**fresh water – technologies**

Countries that are near the sea can create ..... with desalination. It can be expensive. So engineers are developing new and cheaper .....

**Read and choose:**

- ① This stops water moving in a river and saves water for farming, irrigation and energy.  
a. dam                                      b. aqueduct
- ② This is a place in a desert with water, trees and plants  
a. barrier                                  b. oasis
- ③ Put these in front of the door when there is a flood.  
a. sandbags                                b. drains
- ④ A car, bridge or building can ..... in flood.  
a. install                                    b. wash away
- ⑤ Desalination is good for countries with ..... .  
a. a lot of fresh water                    b. not much fresh water

**Correct the verbs as in the example:**

- ① There (am – is – are) enough sweets for everyone.
- ② There (am – is – are) too much water in the canal.
- ③ There (am – is – are) enough rice to cook dinner.
- ④ There (am – is – are) too many chairs in the living room.
- ⑤ There is too (many – much – enough) sand in the sandbag.
- ⑥ There aren't (too many – too much – enough) chairs for everyone to sit on.
- ⑦ There are too (much – many – enough) boys in the room. We can't get in.
- ⑧ There (am not – isn't – aren't) enough paper for every pupil.





- 9 There (am – is – are) too many people in the street.
- 10 There (am – is – are) too much salt in my pizza.
- 11 There (am not – isn't – are not) enough meat in the fridge.
- 12 There (am not – isn't – aren't) enough balls for every player.
- 13 There is too (many – much – enough) salt in my food.
- 14 There aren't (too much – too – enough) bikes for every child.
- 15 There are too (many – much – enough) books in this library.
- 16 There isn't (too – enough – too many) bread in the kitchen.

## Circle the word with a different sound:

- |             |         |          |
|-------------|---------|----------|
| 1 dangerous | famous  | cobra    |
| 2 hunt      | water   | tent     |
| 3 river     | polar   | enormous |
| 4 wetland   | camp    | hump     |
| 5 acacia    | nervous | under    |

## Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

- 1 There is too much meat. (plates of meat)  
.....
- 2 We need more water for deserts to be green land. (enough)  
.....
- 3 His food is full of lots of salt. (too much)  
.....
- 4 I can't give my friends pencils. I don't have many. (enough)  
.....
- 5 There is too much water. (bottles of water)  
.....
- 6 She can't buy the skirt with this little money. She needs 80 pounds more. (enough)  
.....
- 7 We have lots of trees in the park. (too many)  
.....
- 8 There isn't a book for every pupil in the class. (enough)  
.....
- 9 People fill the streets of Cairo. (too many)  
.....
- 10 Her pizza is full of lots of salt. (too much)  
.....



## Unit Test 6 6



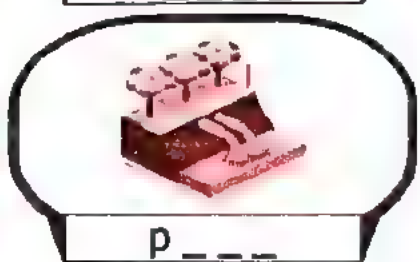
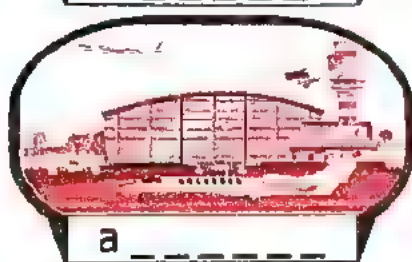
## 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

(2Ms)

- Basil : Can I play football in the street, mum?  
 Mother : .....  
 Basil : ..... ?  
 Mother : Because there are too many cars and trucks.

## 2 Supply the missing letters:

(6Ms)



## 3 Choose the correct word in brackets:

(8Ms)

- ① Flood water can (ruin – warn – build) homes, shops, and offices.
- ② There isn't (enough – too many – too) tea in my cup.
- ③ Water on the surface of streets can go down a (drain – barrier – dam).
- ④ There are too (many – much – enough) pencils in the bag.
- ⑤ Farmers use (holes – fields – irrigation) to water their crops.
- ⑥ There aren't (too – too much – enough) rulers in the bag.
- ⑦ Water moves in (pipes – sandbags – dams) under the ground or above the ground.
- ⑧ There is too (enough – many – much) water in the glass.

## 4 Rewrite the following sentences doing as shown:

(4Ms)

- ① We don't have a cup for everyone. (enough)  
 .....  
 ② They have lots of bread in the kitchen. (too much)  
 .....



3 There is too much coffee.

(cups of coffee)

4 We don't have much cheese to make sandwiches. (enough)

**Read the following passage and answer the questions below: (4Ms)**

There are parks in towns and cities. Parks are places with lots of grass, trees, plants and flowers. People can go, play and relax there. Lots of people like having their picnics there. There's a big park near our house in Cairo. I sometimes go there with my friends on Friday. People put litter in the bins in the park so the park is very clean.

**A // Answer the following questions:**

1 What are parks?

2 Why do people go to parks?

**B // Choose the correct answer:**

3 There are (boxes – boards – bins) for litter in the park.

4 People have (parties – picnics – lessons) at parks.

**Write a paragraph of four sentences on:**

(4Ms)

**"The desert"**

**Words to help you:**

desert – hard life – little rain – little water – hot weather – animals – people – tents – mud bricks

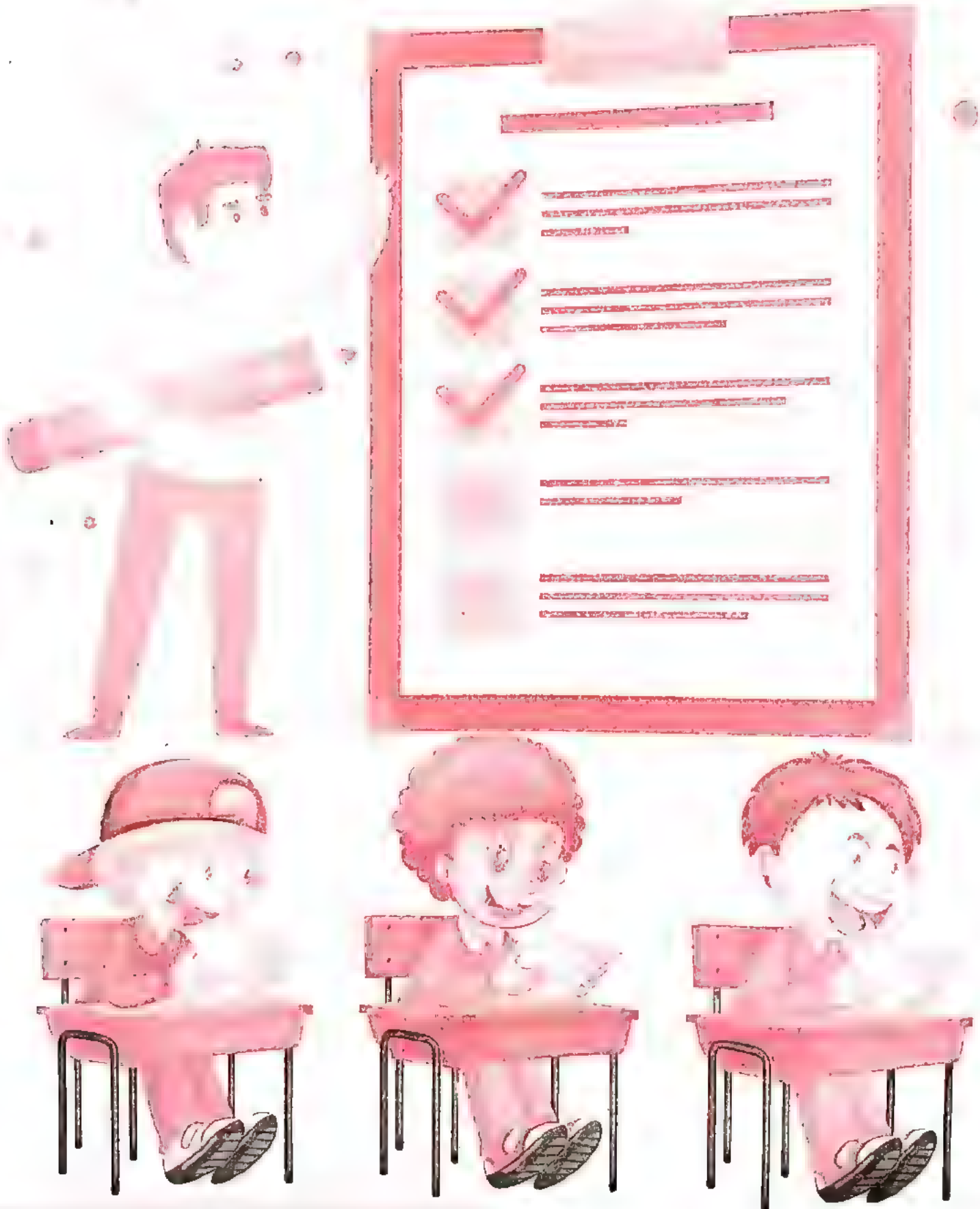


**Copy the following sentence:**

(2Ms)

A good beginning makes a good end.

# Revision Tests







**1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: (2Ms)**

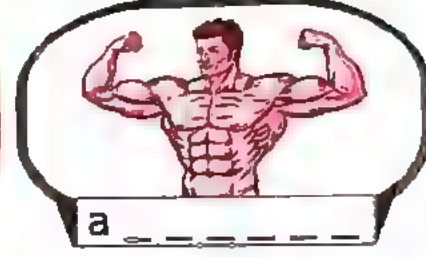
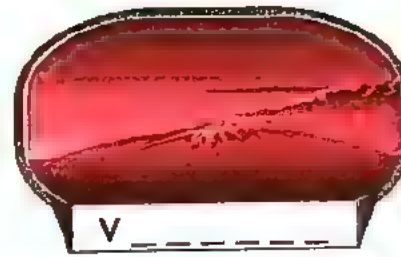
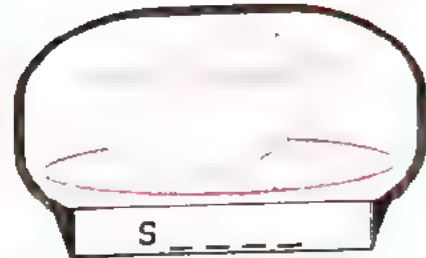
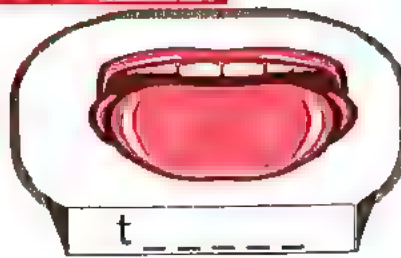
Arwa : How fast can you run?

Athlete : .....

Arwa : ..... ?

Athlete : Yes, I will win the next race.

**2 Supply the missing letters: (6Ms)**



**3 Choose the correct word in brackets: (8Ms)**

- ① The (athlete – track – event) around the field is very long.
- ② I think the athlete wearing red (win – will win – winning).
- ③ (Deserts – Lakes – Rivers) are very hot and dry.
- ④ I'm (go – goes – going) to wear a helmet.
- ⑤ There are lots of (carbohydrates – fats – vitamins) in fruit.
- ⑥ Have you (ever – never – since) tried coffee?
- ⑦ We (might – might not – can) play football. It's very hot today.
- ⑧ The (South Pole – North Pole – equator) is the point at the furthest north of the world.

**4 Rewrite the following sentences doing as shown: (4Ms)**

① No, he won't play tennis.

(Will)

② You should have a healthy body.

(unhealthy)



3 It had a long tail.

(not)



4 We don't have a cup for everyone.

(enough)



**Read the following passage and answer the questions below: (4Ms)**

Yesterday, the weather was nice. It was warm and sunny. Dad wanted to take us out to enjoy this fine weather. He took us on a boat trip on the river. It was a wonderful trip. We ate our sandwiches and enjoyed the fresh air. At five o'clock in the afternoon we walked back home. We were very happy.

**Answer the following questions:**

1 What was the weather like yesterday? .....

2 When did they walk back home? .....

**Choose the correct answer:**

3 The trip was (nice – noisy – bad).

4 They were very (sad – quiet – happy).

**Write a paragraph of four sentences on: (4Ms)**

**"Your best friend"**  
**Words to help you:**

name – age – grade – hobbies – interests – in the future – hopes to be

.....

.....

.....

.....



**Copy the following sentence:**

(2Ms)

A good book is a good friend.







# 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: (2Ms)

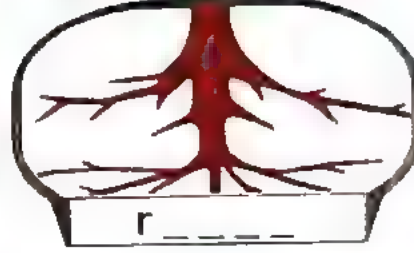
Sameh : Are you going to go to the park at the weekend?

Maged : .....

Sameh : What are you going to do?

Maged : .....

# 2 Supply the missing letters: (6Ms)



# 3 Choose the correct word in brackets: (8Ms)

- ① Players usually (worry – support – warm up) before they start the match.
- ② It (will – won't – is) be easy to win today. It will be difficult.
- ③ Muscles are attached (at – to – for) bones.
- ④ There (am not – isn't – aren't) enough bridges in my town.
- ⑤ You (should – shouldn't – will) eat cookies every day.
- ⑥ The (mountain – oasis – ground) is a place in the desert where there's water.
- ⑦ I have (visiting – visit – visited) an oasis with my family three times.
- ⑧ There was a (thunderstorm – flood – volcano) in Egypt. Water filled all streets and roads.

# 4 Rewrite the following sentences doing as shown: (4Ms)

① I like fish and chicken.

(don't like)

② .....  
 ⚡

② Yes, I've tried Siwan food.

(Have)

③ .....  
 ⚡

3 It will be difficult to win today.

(easy)

4 They have lots of bread in the kitchen.

(too much)

Read the following passage and answer the questions below:

(4Ms)

Eating healthy food helps people do their best at work and at play. It helps them control their weight and stops them feeling weak or tired during the day. Good nutrition can help prevent health problems as well, from tooth decay in children to heart disease in adults.

There are some healthy eating tips that you should follow. You should eat a variety of food. You should choose a diet low in fats or processed food. You should eat plenty of fruit and vegetables. You should use sugar and salt in moderation.

Answer the following questions:

- 1 How can good nutrition help us?
- 2 Find words in the passage that give the same meaning as: - stop - advice.

Choose the correct answer:

- 3 You should eat (a little – a few – plenty) of fruit and vegetables.
- 4 Eating healthy food helps people control their (height – weight – length).

Write a paragraph of four sentences on:

(4Ms)

Ideas to help you:

"Nature"

Allah – great creator – nature – wonderful – mountains – hills – lakes – islands – forests – seas – rivers – oceans – weather – cold – hot – warm – cool



Copy the following sentence:

(2Ms)

One hour today is worth two tomorrow.



### 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: (2Ms)

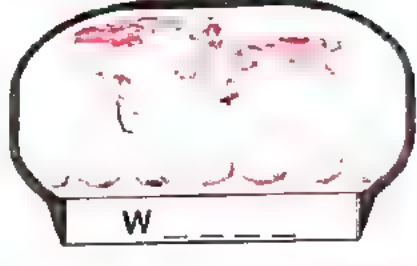
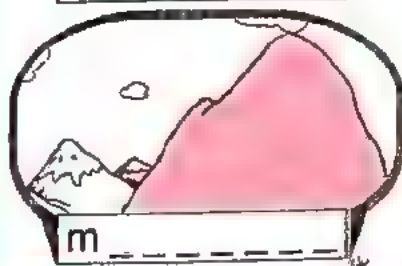
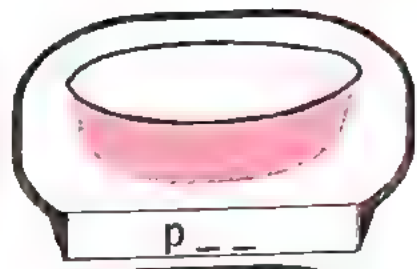
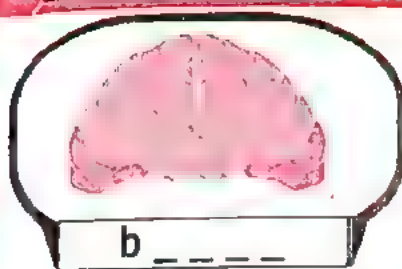
Mai : Do you ever skip breakfast?

Ola : .....

Mai : ..... ?

Ola : I always drink a glass of water every hour.

### 2 Supply the missing letters: (6Ms)



### 3 Choose the correct word in brackets: (8Ms)

- ① Water on the surface of streets can go down a (drain – barrier – dam).
- ② Dina jumped (high – higher – the highest) than Lara.
- ③ We need (veins – arteries – nutrients) to help us grow.
- ④ There isn't (enough – too many – too) tea in my cup.
- ⑤ There's (protein – fiber – calcium) in meat and fish.
- ⑥ Should he (go – goes – going) to bed early?
- ⑦ I (might – might not – can't) eat a sandwich. I'm hungry.
- ⑧ Lions and cheetahs (hunt – grow – hide) other animals for food.

### 4 Rewrite the following sentences doing as shown: (4Ms)

- ① Football is my favorite sport. I'm not a good footballer. (but)

.....

- ② She might drink orange juice. (not)

.....



- 3 I gave my mum a present.

(have)

- 4 We have lots of trees in the garden.

(too many)

5 Read the following passage and answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Why is getting enough sleep so important for children? Most children between the ages of five and ten need about ten hours of sleep, but the average child this age only sleeps, about nine hours a day. Getting enough sleep is important because it allows your body to rest for the next day. Children are always busy: going to school, doing chores, playing with friends, going to sports practice, taking music lessons, doing homework ... When your body doesn't get enough sleep, you can feel tired, sad or angry. Sometimes it is hard to concentrate. Children who don't sleep enough can get sick. Be sure to get enough sleep and you'll feel a lot better.

A Answer the following questions:

- 1 Why is getting enough sleep important for children?
- 2 What happens if your body doesn't get enough sleep?

B Choose the correct answer:

- 3 Be sure to get enough sleep and you'll feel (lazy – bad – better).
- 4 Most children between the age of five and ten need about (ten – eleven – seven) hours of sleep.

6 Write a paragraph of four sentences on: (4Ms)

**"Rainforests"**

C Words to help you:

grow – hot countries – plants – trees – live – animals – birds  
– useful – environment – people – cut down – in danger

.....

.....

.....



7 Copy the following sentence:

(2Ms)

What you don't know won't hurt you.



### 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: (2Ms)

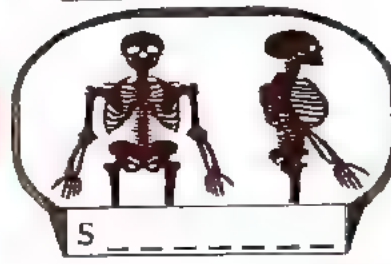
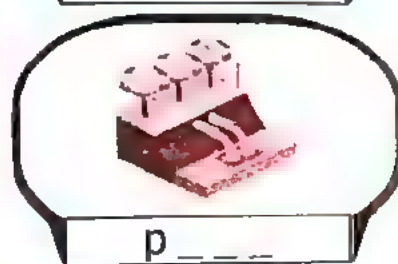
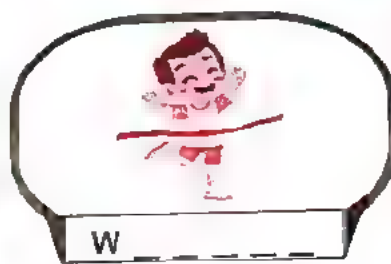
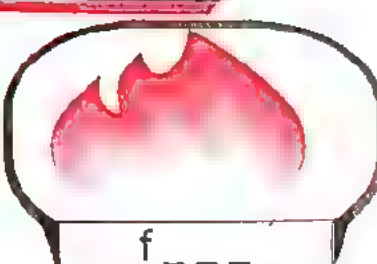
Rana : .....

Sara : Yes, I eat healthy food.

Rana : Can you remember a food in the protein section?

Sara : .....

### 2 Supply the missing letters: (6Ms)



### 3 Choose the correct word in brackets. (8Ms)

- ① Lots of (medals – sports – athletes) are competing in the race.
- ② I can't go to the club today (so – but – because) I have much homework.
- ③ Blood carries (stomach acid – oxygen and nutrients) around the body.
- ④ He (buy – is going to buy – buys) a new bike next week.
- ⑤ Milk and cheese are (daily – diary – dairy) foods.
- ⑥ She shouldn't (eat – eats – eating) or drink a lot of sugar.
- ⑦ Water on the surface of streets can go down a (drain – barrier – dam).
- ⑧ The (cheetah – fennec fox – sloth) moves very slowly.

### 4 Rewrite the following sentences doing as shown: (4Ms)

- ① She's training hard so she will win the first medal. (because)

.....

- ② Have you ever climbed a mountain. (No, ....)

.....

- 3 Cars filled the streets of the city.

(too many)

- 4 No, I shouldn't drink lots of sweet drinks.

(Should)

**Read the following passage and answer the questions below: (4Ms)**

Deserts are generally hot, dry regions where it almost never rains. Some parts of deserts are covered with sand. The sandy hills are called sand dunes. Other parts of deserts have rocky hills and mountains. The Sahara Desert is the biggest desert in the world. It is in northern Africa. It measures about 9 million square kilometres. It is almost as big as the United States. There are many different plants and animals in the desert. They are all able to live with very little water.

**Answer the following questions:**

- 1 What is the weather like in the desert? .....
- 2 What is a sand dune? .....
- 3 How big is the Sahara Desert? .....

**Choose the correct answer:**

- 3 The Sahara Desert is (nine thousand – nine million – nine hundred) square kilometres.
- 4 The Sahara Desert is in (Asia – Europe – Africa).

**Write a paragraph of four sentences on:**

(4Ms)

**Words to help you:**

**"My uncle's farm"**

uncle's – farm – large – grow – grain – raise –  
animals – machines – harvest – produce – crops



**Copy the following sentence:**

(2Ms)

Obey your parents and teachers.





### 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: (2Ms)

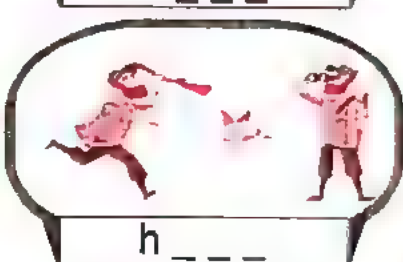
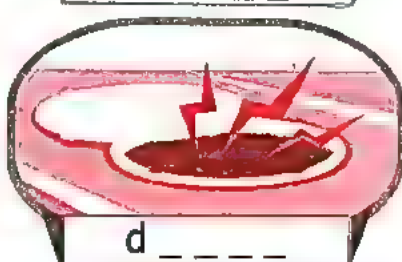
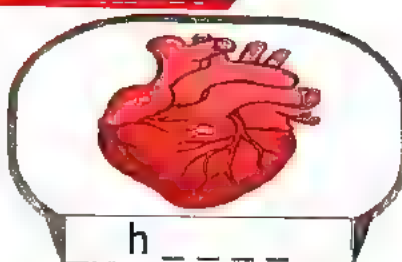
Khalid : What might you do tomorrow?

Adel : .....

Khalid : Will you play football with us?

Adel : .....

### 2 Supply the missing letters: (6Ms)



### 3 Choose the correct word in brackets: (8Ms)

- ① He is a fast (footballer – runner – cyclist). He rides his bike very fast.
- ② He wants to come first (so – because – but) he trains hard.
- ③ Your heart moves (vessels – blood – stomach) around your body.
- ④ (Are – Have – Do) you going to wear your helmet?
- ⑤ There are (vitamins – fats – carbohydrates) in olive oil and butter.
- ⑥ He's a (volunteer – firefighter – police officer). He works without getting paid.
- ⑦ There (am – is – are) too much cheese in my sandwich.
- ⑧ We have (see – saw – seen) a big lake.

### 4 Rewrite the following sentences doing as shown: (4Ms)

① I was hungry. I ate all my sandwiches. (so)

② He isn't good at throwing or jumping. (is good)



3 I went to the wildlife park.

(Where)

4 You should never be dehydrated.

(should always)

**Read the following passage and answer the questions below: (4Ms)**

I think life will be different in the future. In thirty years forward in time, I think my town will be bigger than today. I will see very modern buildings. I hope they will be more beautiful. People may travel by other means of transport. They may eat some new kinds of food. Students may not go to schools. They may learn at home. People may spend their time in different ways from those of today. The future will be better.

**Answer the following questions:**

- 1 How will the buildings be like in thirty years in time? .....
- 2 What will people eat in the future? .....

**Choose the correct answer:**

- 3 Students may learn at (streets – home – clubs) in the future.
- 4 The future will be (bad – worse – better).

**Write a paragraph of four sentences on:**

(4Ms)

**"My favourite sport"**


**Ideas to help you:**

- ~ favourite sport.
- ~ How long have you played it?
- ~ Where do you play it?
- ~ Your favourite player.
- ~ Who do you play it with?
- ~ Your future dream.



**Copy the following sentence:**

(2Ms)

 Never bite the hand that feeds you.

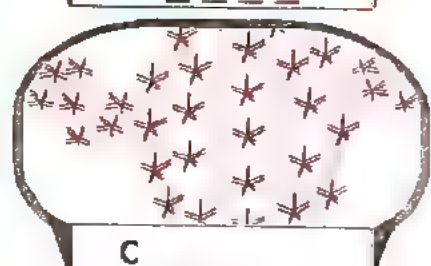
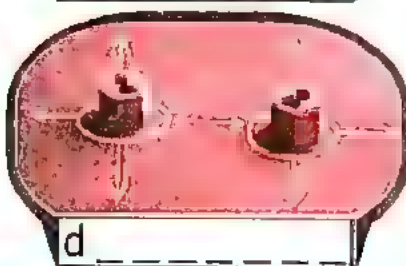
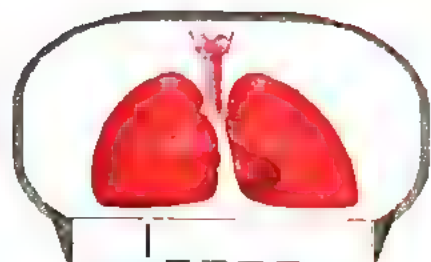
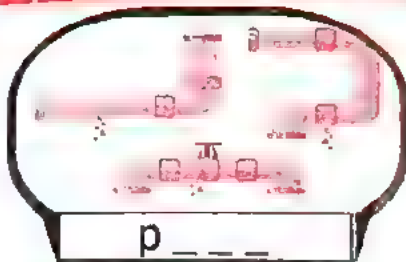




# 1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: (2Ms)

- Nada : What's your favorite sport?  
 Rana : .....  
 Nada : ..... ?  
 Rana : I go to the track 3 times a week.

# 2 Supply the missing letters: (6Ms)



# 3 Choose the correct word in brackets: (8Ms)

- ① The (race – winner – track) is exciting. The fastest one will win.
- ② Will she (run – runs – running) fast in the race?
- ③ Our (teeth – skin – brain) protects us from dirt, germs and the sun.
- ④ Is he going to (climb – climbs – climbing) the mountain?
- ⑤ (Fiber – Calcium – Cereal) is good for our bones.
- ⑥ There is too (enough – many – much) water in the glass.
- ⑦ It might not (climbed – climbs – climb) trees.
- ⑧ (Has – Have – Did) you ever climbed a tree?

# 4 Rewrite the following sentences doing as shown: (4Ms)

- ① She plays with her friends. (tomorrow)
- ② He took lots of sandwiches. (taken)



3 We don't have much cheese to make sandwiches. (enough)



4 Should I eat a healthy diet? (Yes, .....)



**Read the following passage and answer the questions below: (4Ms)**

Crocodiles are dangerous animals. They live in rivers and near them. They hunt animals such as goats and small cows for food. They have very sharp teeth. They hide in water to catch animals which come to drink. A crocodile hits with its head or tail and then pulls the animal to eat it under water.

**Answer the following questions:**

- 1 What kind of animal is a crocodile? .....
- 2 How do they catch animals? .....

**Choose the correct answer:**

- 3 The underlined word "They" refers to (rivers – cows – crocodiles).
- 4 Crocodiles have sharp (head – tail – teeth).

**Write a paragraph of four sentences on: (4Ms)**

**Guiding words:**

**"How to be fit"**

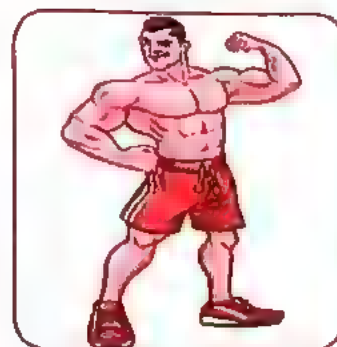
important – be healthy – eat – drink – fresh – practice –  
exercise – club – friends – like

.....

.....

.....

.....



**Copy the following sentence:**

**(2Ms)**



Practice makes perfect.

.....

.....



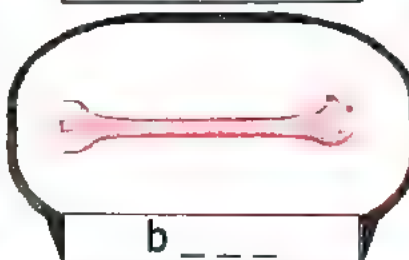
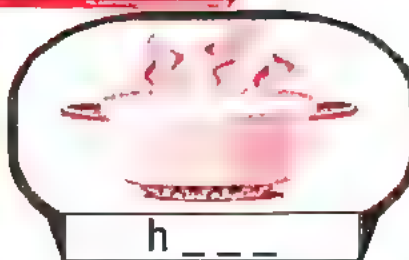
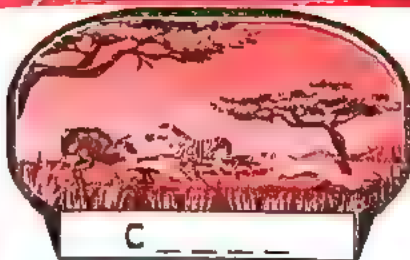
Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue: (2Ms)

Tamer : Have you ever visited Siwa?

Ramy : .....  
What interesting things can we see there?

Tamer : .....

Supply the missing letters: (6Ms)



Choose the correct word in brackets: (8Ms)

- ① Always (support – pressure – damage) your friend.
- ② Ramy jumped (the farthest – far – farther) of his three friends.
- ③ Our (skull – jaw – ribs) protects our brain and eyes.
- ④ Is she going to play video games? \_ No, she (doesn't – is – isn't).
- ⑤ We can get (carbohydrates – protein – vitamins) in bread, pasta and rice.
- ⑥ Should I drink water? \_ Yes, (I should – you shouldn't – you should).
- ⑦ The (swamp – tropical – polar) parts of the world are very hot.
- ⑧ There are lots of dates in the (acacia – tamarisk – palm) tree.

Rewrite the following sentences doing as shown: (4Ms)

① We ride our bikes on Friday. (going to)

② Doing exercise is good for your body. (should)

3 What might you do tomorrow?

(I .....)

4 He didn't work hard. He came fourth in the race. (because)

**Read the following passage and answer the questions below: (4Ms)**

Exercise is fun. It makes you feel good. Exercise keeps your body strong and fit. You should do exercise every day. Besides doing exercise you should eat good food that contains proteins, fats and vitamins that give you energy. You should also have enough sleep to be healthy. So exercise, food and sleep are the keys for good health.

**Answer the following questions:**

1 What are the keys for good health? .....

2 Why should you eat food that contains vitamins? .....

**Choose the correct answer:**

3 Exercise is (fun – fan – boring).

4 Exercise makes you feel (bad – good – sad).

**Write a paragraph of four sentences on: (4Ms)**

**Guiding words:**

**"A day at the zoo"**

last holiday – father – took – car – saw – animals –  
enjoyed – like – ate – drank – spent



**Copy the following sentence:**

(2Ms)

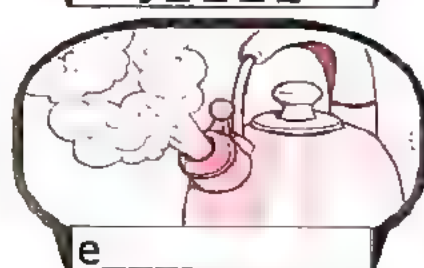
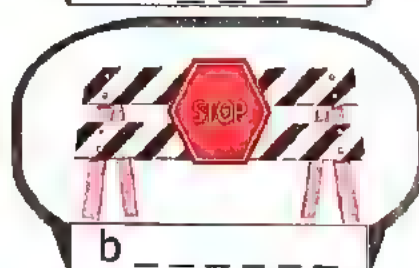
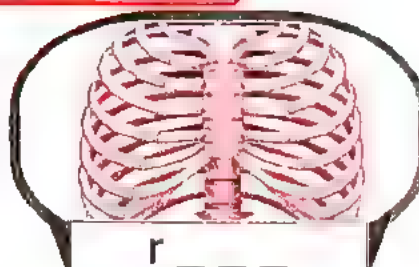
Prevention is better than cure.



**1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:** (2Ms)

- Faris : ..... ?  
 Magid : This book is about famous Egyptian world records.  
 Faris : Can you tell me one of these records?  
 Magid : .....

**2 Supply the missing letters:** (6Ms)



**3 Choose the correct word in brackets:** (8Ms)

- ① They made a new world (map – country – record). They made the largest GPS drawing.
- ② I don't like pizza (and – or – but) pasta.
- ③ The (lungs – heart – brain) moves blood around the body.
- ④ Are they going to (has – have – had) chicken for dinner?
- ⑤ There (am not – isn't – are not) enough rice in the fridge.
- ⑥ I've (ever – never – already) eaten basil. I don't know it.
- ⑦ It might not (digs – dig – digging) burrows.
- ⑧ There aren't (too – too much – enough) rulers in the bag.

**4 Rewrite the following sentences doing as shown:** (4Ms)

- ① He's going to go to the club. (not)  
 .....  
 ② No, I've never seen a snake. (Have)  
 .....

- 3 There isn't a book for every pupil in the class. (enough)  
 4 Yes, she will throw the ball. (Will)

**Read the following passage and answer the questions below: (4Ms)**

Mr. Amr is a doctor in a big hospital. He likes his work very much because he can help sick people. He is 35 years old. His wife is a teacher. She likes her work too. She is 30 years old. They have three children. Two boys and a girl. Ahmed and Nour are twins. They are in primary four. Mona is the oldest one. She is in primary five. Ahmed and Nour have got a big dog. Mona has got a white cat.

**Answer the following questions:**

- 1 How old is Mr. Amr? .....  
 2 Why does Mr. Amr like his work? .....

**Choose the correct answer:**

- 3 His wife is a (teacher – doctor – nurse).  
 4 Mona has got a (white dog – white cat – white bird).

**Write a paragraph of four sentences on: (4Ms)**

**"Your school"**

**Guiding words:**

clean – tidy – useful – teachers – help –  
 break – play – enjoy – library



**Copy the following sentence:**

**(2Ms)**

It is always darkest before the dawn.



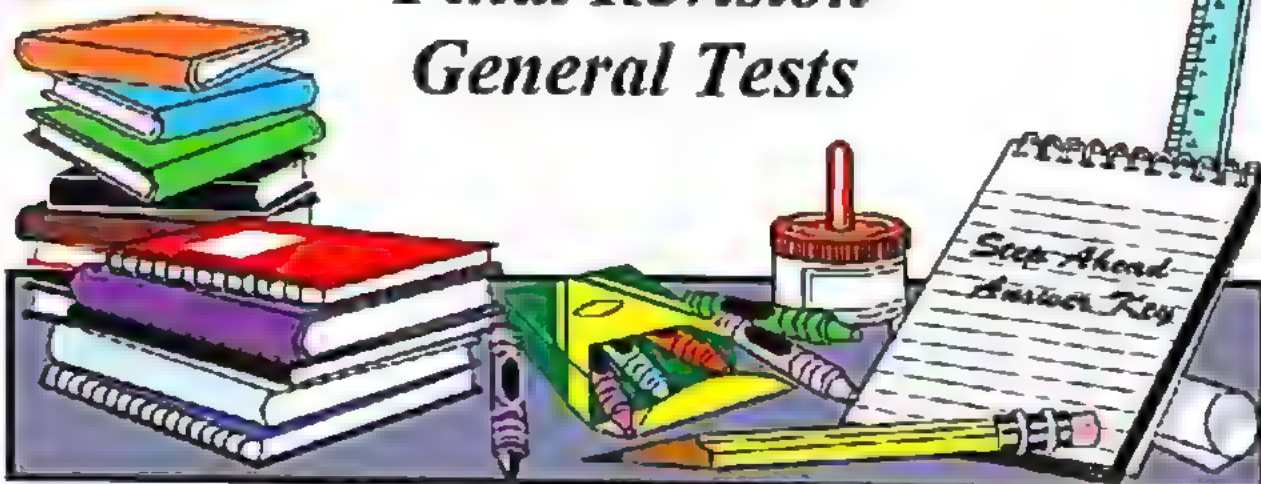
*Step Ahead*



*Answer Key*

**Connect Plus (3)**

*The Set Book  
Final Revision  
General Tests*



**2021**

## Part (1) The Set Book

### Unit (1)

#### \*\* Lesson (1) \*\*

##### 1 Supply the missing parts:

- I like running. - Yes, I am.

##### 2 Choose the word(s): (Vocabulary)

- 1- track 2- throw 3- athletes  
4- jump 5- race 6- medal  
7- competed 8- win 9- distance  
10- measures 11- far 12- fast  
13- Who 14- high

##### 3 Choose the word(s): (Structures)

- 1- will win 2- will be 3- won't 4- get  
5- won't 6- Will 7- run  
8- won't 9- will 10- will

##### 4 Choose the word(s): (Adjectives)

- 1- higher 2- the fastest 3- slowest  
4- farther 5- faster 6- the farthest  
7- slower than 8- the highest

##### 5 Choose the word(s):

- athletes / track / race / wins / throw /  
distance / measures / competed / jump /  
medal

##### 6 Supply the missing letters:

- track - athlete - race  
- medal - win - run  
- throw - jump - measure

##### 7 Read and complete:

- 1) distance 2) throw 3) win  
4) measuring 5) compete 6) jump

##### 8 Rewrite the following sentences:

- 1- He will get a medal.  
2- Will he play tennis?  
3- Yes, he will.  
4- How far can she jump?  
5- He will wear a red T-shirt tomorrow.  
6- How fast can he run?  
7- Will she throw the ball?  
8- No, I won't.  
9- It won't be easy to win today.  
10- The winner will be happy.

#### \*\* Lesson (2) \*\*

##### 1 Supply the missing parts:

- I can run 100 meters in one minute.  
- Yes, I do.  
- Will you win the next race?

##### 2 Supply the missing letters:

- exercise - runner - train  
- support - warm up - healthy food  
- parents - friend - worried

##### 3 Choose the word(s): (Vocabulary)

- 1- train 2- warm up 3- exercise  
4- support 5- record 6- healthy  
7- fit 8- problem

##### 4 Choose the word(s): (Structures)

- 1- and 2- but 3- because 4- or  
5- so 6- often 7- will win 8- Which

##### 5 Complete the table using:

- 1- and 2- because 3- but 4- so 5- or

##### 6 Choose the word(s):

- A) 1- Three times a week.  
2- Because She's a really good friend  
to her. B) 3- didn't win 4- fruit

##### 7 Write a paragraph of four sentences:

My favorite sport is football. I like it  
because it's exciting. I play it 3 times a  
week. I play it with my friends.

##### 8 Rewrite the following sentences:

- 1- I don't like fish or chicken.  
2- He came fourth in the race because he  
didn't work hard.  
3- Football is my favorite sport but I'm not  
a good footballer.  
4- I was hungry so I ate all my sandwiches.  
5- He is good at throwing and jumping.  
6- She will win the first medal because  
she's training hard.

#### \*\* Lesson (3) \*\*

##### 1 Supply the missing parts:

- Yes, I have.  
- Who is your best friend?  
- I listen to my friends and support them.

##### 2 Write the correct word:

- secrets - scared - swimming  
- competition - smile - apologize



### 5 Complete the table using

| Good         | Bad                 |
|--------------|---------------------|
| 1) listen    | 1) spread rumors    |
| 2) support   | 2) make fun of      |
| 3) have fun  | 3) tell secrets     |
| 4) apologize | 4) pressure someone |

### 6 Choose the word(s):

- 1) fun 2) support 3) secrets 4) have  
5) spread 6) ideas 7) pressure  
8) apologize 9) scared 10) kind

### 7 Read the passage and answer:

- A) 1- Because Sherif spread his secret  
2- Because he's scared of water.  
B) 3- happier 4- apologized

### 8 Sort and complete the table:

| C sounds like k | C sounds like s |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1) cake         | 1) camel        |
| 2) camel        | 2) city         |
| 3) coffee       | 3) face         |
| 4) cold         | 4) ice          |
| 5) fact         | 5) pencil       |
| 6) music        | 6) rice         |

## \*\* Lesson (4) \*\*

### 1 Supply the missing parts:

- What are you doing?
- What is it about?
- Yes. The Egyptian Mau can run up to 48 kilometers an hour

### 2 Supply the missing letters:

- football - cyclist - cup
- pyramids - world - national team

### 3 Choose the word(s): (Vocabulary)

- 1- second 2- record 3- kilometer  
4- pyramids 5- minute 6- cyclist  
7- scored 8- meter 9- footballer  
10) Cup 11) challenge 12) an

### 4 Read the passage and answer:

- A) 1- They made the largest GPS drawing by bicycle.  
2- At the Great Pyramids of Giza  
B) 3- cat 4- heart

### 5 Write a paragraph of four sentences:

I like Mohamed Salah. I like him because he is a very good player. He plays for

Liverpool. He won lots of cups and medals with his team

## \*\* Unit (1) Test (1) \*\*

### 1 Supply the missing parts:

- What's your favorite sport?
- How often do you go to the track?

### 2 Supply the missing letters:

- medal - race - winner
- distance - friend - athlete

### 3 Choose the correct word.

- 1- will win 2- faster 3- because 4- support  
5- come 6- highest 7- or 8- won't

### 4 Rewrite the following sentences:

- 1- Will you make fun of your friend?  
2- How fast can he run?  
3- Ali can jump farther than Mazen.  
4- I will help my mum

### 5 Read the following passage:

- A) 1- It's something which is the fastest, biggest, oldest, or smallest in the world  
2- He scored the highest number of goals in one season-32 goals.  
B) 3- seven 4- football

### 6 Write a paragraph of four sentences:

I do lots of things to get ready for a competition. I train hard. I eat healthy food. I measure my time. I get support from other people

## Unit (2)

## \*\* Lesson (1) \*\*

### 1 Supply the missing letters:

- brain - skeleton - blood
- heart - lungs - body

### 2 Match (A) with (B):

- 1- A gas which all living organisms need.  
2- We need these to help us grow  
3- These carry blood without a lot of oxygen in it to the heart.  
4) These carry blood with oxygen in it away from the heart  
5) A liquid that carries oxygen and nutrients around your body  
6) Veins and arteries

**4 Read the following passage:**

- A) 1- About 70 times a minute.  
2- It moves blood around the body.  
B) 3- brain 4- skeleton

**5 Read the following passage:**

- A) 1- Blood carries oxygen and nutrients to all parts of the body.  
2- The heart pumps it out to the rest of the body in the arteries.  
B) 3- Veins 4- lungs

**\*\* Lesson (2) \*\***

**1 Supply the dialogue:**

- No, I'm not. - Why?  
- I'm going to visit my grandma.

**3 Choose the correct word:**

- 1) is 2) are 3) am 4) are 5) is  
6) are 7) going 8) go 9) is going to wear  
10) is going to buy 11) Are 12) climb  
13) isn't 14) have 15) going 16) is

**4 Supply the missing letters:**

- skeleton - bone - muscles  
- ribs - skull - brain  
- knee - elbow - jaw  
- heart - lungs - arm

**5 Read the following passage:**

- A) 1- Because it keeps us strong and helps us move.  
2- We need muscles to move our bones.  
B) 3- elbows 4- hard

**6 Write a paragraph of four sentences:**

I'm going to play with my friends. I'm going to watch TV. I'm going to visit my grandparents. I'm going to go to the park. I'm going to eat lunch there.

**7 Rewrite the following sentences:**

- 1) She's going to play with her friends tomorrow.  
2) We're going to ride our bikes on Friday.  
3) He's not going to go to the club.  
4) Is she going to wear her sunglasses?  
5) I'm going to watch TV.  
6) Are you going to watch TV?  
7) Is he going to help at home?  
8) We're going to go to Alexandria next week.  
9) No, I'm not. 10) Yes, she is

**\*\* Lesson (3) \*\***

**1 Supply the missing parts:**

- No, I don't.  
- I usually have sandwiches and fruit.  
- How often do you eat fruit?

**2 Supply the missing letters:**

- hungry - argument - night  
- vegetables - juice - sleep  
- relaxed - cross - water  
- tired - fruit - late  
- breakfast - lunch - dinner

**4 Write the correct phrases:**

- 1) be positive 2) be in a good mood  
3) have an argument 4) be calm  
5) stay up late 6) skip breakfast

**5 Complete the sentences using:**

- 1) stay up late 2) be positive  
3) is in good mood 4) have an argument  
5) skip breakfast 6) is calm

**6 Put a (✓) or (✗):**

- Laila (✗) - Adam (✓) - Dareen (✓)  
- Zain (✗) - Malak (✗)

**7 Write a paragraph of four sentences:**

I'm healthy. I exercise every day. I sleep 8 hours a day. I watch TV one hour every night. I never play video games. I usually eat healthy food.

**\*\* Lesson (4) \*\***

**1 Supply the missing parts:**

- No, it isn't.  
- Is it our lungs? - Is it our skin?

**2 Supply the missing letters:**

- sunburn - skin - sunscreen  
- germs - weather - hot  
- top - middle - bottom

**3 Read the passage and answer:**

- 1- cook / warm 2- Water  
3- blood vessels 4- bones / muscles  
5- sunburn

**\*\* Lesson (5) \*\***

**1 Complete the sentences using:**

- 1) mouth 2) teeth 3) chew / tongue  
4) saliva 5) swallow 6) stomach  
7) breaks down 8) absorb



**2 Supply the missing letters:**

- stomach - mouth - swallow
- teeth - chew - tongue
- absorb - jaw - liquid

**3 Read the following passage:**

- A) 1- We get energy and nutrients.  
2- This is a liquid made in our mouth.
- B) 3- mouth 4- absorb

**4 Number in order:**

- 1- We chew food in our mouths
- 2- Saliva helps break down the food in our mouths.
- 3- We swallow the food.
- 4) Muscles help push food from our mouths into our stomach.
- 5) Stomach acid breaks down the food in our stomach.
- 6) The body absorbs nutrients from our food.

**\*- Unit (2) Test (2) \*-**

**1 Supply the missing parts:**

- How often do you sleep?
- Yes, I do.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**

- skull - heart - lungs
- elbow - skin - germs

**3 Choose the correct word:**

- 1- going 2- always 3- is 4- to  
5- go 6- nutrients 7- wear 8- blood

**4 Rewrite the following sentences:**

- 1- Is he going to ride a horse?
- 2- I'm going to play with my friends.
- 3- No, they aren't.
- 4- We're not going to do exercise after school.

**5 Read the following passage:**

- A) 1- Hady is going to read some books.  
2- Sameh is going to go to the cinema.
- B) 3- one sister 4- holiday

**6 Write a paragraph of four sentences:**

There are a lot of organs in our body. The heart moves blood around our body. The skeleton makes us strong. The stomach helps in digestion. The skin protects us. Our bones make us move.

**Unit (3)**

**\*\* Lesson (1) \*\***

**1 Supply the missing parts:**

- Do you eat healthy food?
- Yes. Milk and cheese.
- Yes. Pasta, bread and rice.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**

- carbohydrates - protein - vegetables
- fats - sugar - dairy
- balance - energy - bone

**3 Read the following passage:**

- 1) vitamins 2) protein 3) dairy 4) fats  
5) Calcium 6) carbohydrates 7) fiber  
8) mineral 9) protein 10) Carbohydrates  
11) Fats 12) sugar

**4 Write a paragraph of four sentences:**

I eat healthy food. I have milk, eggs and cheese for breakfast. I have fish and vegetables for lunch. I have sandwiches and fruit for dinner.

**\*\* Lesson (2) \*\***

**1 Match (A) with (B):**

- 1) when your body gets enough water.
- 2) when your body doesn't get enough water.
- 3) the parts of your body that move.
- 4) things you don't want in your body; they can make you ill.
- 5) how hot or cold you feel.
- 6) a liquid that comes out of your skin when you are hot.

**2 Supply the missing parts:**

- Do you eat enough fruit or vegetables?
- But you should eat enough fruit or vegetables.
- Yes, I know I should.

**3 Supply the missing letters:**

- soil - sweat - joints
- roots - toxins - health
- temperature - organs - headache

**4 Choose the word(s):**

- 1) should 2) shouldn't 3) go 4) eat  
5) drink 6) Should 7) drink  
8) you should 9) should 10) you shouldn't

**5 Read the following passage:**

- A) 1- Our blood is about 82% water.  
2- You feel tired and you don't have a lot of energy. You can get a headache or find it difficult to think.  
B) 3- sweat 4- toxins

**6 Read and complete:**

- 1) should 2) shouldn't  
3) Should / should 4) shouldn't  
5) Should / shouldn't 6) should

**7 Write a paragraph of four sentences:**

Water is very important. Water helps our body. Animals need water to live. Plants need water to grow.

**8 Rewrite the following sentences:**

- 1- You should do exercise.  
2- You shouldn't drink soda.  
3- You should always be hydrated.  
4- Should you drink enough water?  
5- No, I shouldn't.  
6- You should make your body strong.  
7- You shouldn't sleep for only five hours.  
8- Yes, you should.  
9- Should you drink lots of sweet drinks?  
10- You shouldn't have an unhealthy body.

**\*\* Lesson (3) \*\***

**1 Supply the missing parts:**

- Candies is my favorite snack.  
- Why? - Is sugar unhealthy?

**2 Match (A) and (B):**

- 1- how much you should eat at one time.  
2- the amount of energy in food  
3- a mineral we need.  
4- the right amount.  
5- more than we need.

**3 Read and answer the questions:**

- 1- chocolate brownie. 2- chocolate brownie.  
3- chocolate brownie.  
4- cake and chocolate brownie.  
5- Yes. Chocolate brownie.  
6- Yes. Chocolate brownie.

**4 Read the following passage:**

- A) 1- To find out what is in our food that helps us decide if it is healthy or unhealthy.  
2- Sodium is a mineral.  
B) 3- calories 4- half

**\*\* Lesson (4) \*\***

**1 Supply the missing letters:**

- electricity - container - fire  
- can - fridge - jar  
- sick - heat - sand

**2 Complete using the following words:**

- 1) water / nutrients 2) salt / preserve  
3) containers 4) electricity

**3 Read the following passage:**

- A) 1- to keep it fresh and safe.  
2- You put the food in a liquid with salt, and close the can. No air gets into the jar or can.  
B) 3- bad 4- healthy

**\*\* Lesson (5) \*\***

**1 Read the following passage:**

- A) 1- It stops our arteries working as well as they should. Over a long time, this can damage our heart.  
2- If we have too much sugar, our brains get a lot of energy quickly. This can make our brain confused.  
B) 3- mouth 4- absorb

**2 Supply the missing letters:**

- snack - dentist - anxious  
- teaspoon - list - yogurt

**3 Write a paragraph of four sentences:**

I eat biscuits. It's one of my snacks. It contains 290 calories. It contains 19 grams fats. It contains 22 grams sugar.

**\*- Unit (3) Test (3) \*-**

**1 Supply the missing parts:**

- No, you shouldn't.  
- What should I have?

**2 Supply the missing letters:**

- pollution - water - sugar  
- vegetables - dentist - fire station

**3 Choose the correct word:**

- 1- should 2- sugar 3- drink  
4- Calones 5- dehydrated 6- preserve  
7- carbohydrates 8- you shouldn't.

**4 Rewrite the following sentences:**

- 1- You shouldn't drink pure water.  
2- Should I eat unhealthy food.



- Or: Yes, you should eat healthy food.  
3- You shouldn't have sweet snacks.  
4- No, you shouldn't.

**5 Read the following passage:**

A) 1- Dalia eats chicken and rice for lunch.

2- at nine o'clock in the evening.

B) 3- chicken 4- biscuits

**6 Write a paragraph of four sentences:**

We should eat fruit and vegetables. We shouldn't drink soda. We should drink enough water. We shouldn't eat candies or sweets.

**Unit (4)**

**\*\* Lesson (1) \*\***

**1 Supply the missing parts:**

- No, it wasn't.
- Was it a fennec fox?

**2 Write the correct word under each:**

- 1) fennec fox 2) sea lion 3) cobra  
4) spider monkey 5) chimpanzee  
6) macaw 7) sloth 8) cheetah

**3 Choose the word(s):**

- 1- went 2- Was 3) had  
4) look 5) moved 6) Was  
7) saw 8) wasn't

**\*\* Lesson (2) \*\***

**1 Supply the missing parts:**

- What might you do tomorrow?
- I might meet my friends.
- I might not play video games.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**

- nest - burrow - river
- hunt - hide - chase
- hole - grass - leaves
- turtle - rabbit - goose
- owl - penguin - whale

**3 Choose the word(s):**

- 1- might not 2- might 3- live 4- might  
5- might not 6- climb 7- might  
8- build 9- might not 10- dig

**4 Read the following passage:**

A) 1- By watching what they do in wildlife parks.

2- Animals take shelter so they can stay warm, be safe from other animals and protect their families.

B) 1- nests 2- holes 3- burrows / shelter  
4- hide 5- chase / hunt 6- live

**5 Read and match:**

- 1) lives in a large group called a colony.  
2) lives in a hole in a tree.  
3) takes shelter under rocks in rivers.  
4) hunt other animals to eat.

**\*\* Lesson (3) \*\***

**1 Write the correct word under each:**

- 1) rainforest 2) wetland 3) polar  
4) grassland 5) desert 6) equator

**2 Read the following passage:**

- 1) polar 2) rainforest 3) wetland  
4) rainforest 5) rainforest 6) wetland

**3 Read the following passage:**

- 1) Because the equator gets the most sunshine.  
2) Because they don't get a lot of sunshine.  
3) Wetland and rainforests.  
4) Desert and grassland.

**\*\* Lesson (4) \*\***

**1 Supply the missing letters:**

- rainforest - tent - insect
- spider - butterfly - lizard
- frog - snake - hunt

**2 Read the following passage:**

A) Read and mark (✓) or (x)

- 1- (x) 2- (✓) 3- (✓)  
4- (x) 5- (✓) 6- (x)

B) Read again and complete:

- 1) emergent 2) food 3) sloths 4) humid  
5) frogs 6) forest floor 7) sunlight

**\*\* Lesson (5) \*\***

**1 Write the correct word under each:**

- flood - drought - deforestation
- machine - pollution - fire
- volcano - factory - garbage

**2 Read the following passage:**

A) Write the word that refers to each:

- 1- pollution 2- building 3- volcanoes  
4- deforestation 5- flood  
6- fire 7- drought

B) Read again and write one word:

- 1) Flood 2) Deforestation 3) Pollution  
4) Building 5) volcano / ash  
6) plants / food 7) drought

3 Read these positive effects:

- 1) flood 2) volcano 3) fire

- Read again and choose:

- 1) water brings nutrients to the land.  
2) the ash is good for the soil.  
3) the nutrients go into the soil.

**\*- \* Unit (4) Test (4) \*- \***

1 Supply the missing parts:

- I might watch TV.  
- I might do my homework.

2 Supply the missing letters:

- nest - macaw - rainforest  
- desert - volcano - pollution

3 Choose the correct word:

- 1- North Pole 2- might not 3- hunt  
4- might 5- sloth 6- eat  
7- tropical 8- Was

4 Rewrite the following sentences:

- 1- She might not drink orange juice.  
2- Where did you go?  
3- I might help at home.  
4- It didn't have a long tail

5 Read the following passage:

- A) 1- Because the lake is a habitat for lots of wildlife. It is also a beautiful place for people to visit and relax. 2- Yes, I do.  
B) 3- edge 4- pollute

6 Write a paragraph of four sentences:

The penguin lives in the polar parts. The camel lives in the desert. The lion lives in the rainforest. The polar bear lives in the polar parts.

**Unit (5)**

**\*\* Lesson (1) \*\***

1 Supply the missing parts:

- No, it haven't. - Yes, it is.  
- Monuments, fresh water, trees and plants.

2 Write the correct word under each:

- 1) food 2) shade 3) medicine

- 4) baskets 5) protection

3 Write the correct word:

- 1) soak 2) underground river 3) herb  
4) oasis 5) surface 6) spring

4 Supply the missing letters:

- lake - desert - mountain  
- shade - dates - storm  
- ground - wood - palm tree  
- farmer - medicine - sick

5 Choose the word(s): (Vocabulary)

- 1) oasis 2) spring 3) herbs  
4) sandstorm 5) Deserts 6) medicine  
7) rivers 8) palm 9) farmer 10) shade

6 Choose the word(s): (Structures)

- 1- has 2- have 3- have 4- has  
5- have 6- has 7- have 8- visited  
9- seen 10- Have 11- never  
12- swum 13- taken 14- have lived  
15- ever 16- haven't

7 Read the passage and answer:

- A) 1- To make baskets. 2- Acacia trees.  
B) 3- shade 4- Basil

C) Match:

- 1) you can get hard wood from this tree.  
2) this special tree gives lots of shade.  
3) you can make baskets with the leaves of this tree.  
4) you can put this herb in food or drink.  
5) these small trees protect the oasis from sandstorms.  
6) this herb has vitamins and minerals in it.

8 Write a paragraph of four sentences:

Siwa Oasis is an interesting place. It's in the desert. There's water in springs there. People can grow plants. They can keep animals. There are date palm trees there. There are also monuments there.

9 Rewrite the following sentences:

- 1) Have you ever seen a snake?  
2) He has taken lots of sandwiches.  
3) No, I haven't  
4) They have seen lots of interesting places.  
5) Have you ever tried Siwan food?  
6) She has swum in the swimming pool.  
7) Yes, I have  
8) I have given my mum a present.



## **\*\*Lesson (2)\*\***

### **1 Write the correct word number each:**

- cloud - heat - experiment
- river - float - evaporation
- sea - condensation - wind

### **2 Read the passage and answer:**

- A) 1- It makes it evaporate.  
2- Precipitation is when water falls from the clouds as rain, snow, or hail.

- B) 3- rises up                      4- Groundwater

### **C) Complete:**

- 1) Precipitation                      2) runoff  
3) groundwater                      4) evaporation  
5) Condensation                      6) water cycle

### **3 Match (A) with (B):**

- 1) The sun turns water into vapor. Vapor rises into the atmosphere.  
2) Water vapor rises and starts to cool. It becomes clouds.  
3) Water falls from the clouds as rain, snow or hail.  
4) When rain falls on high ground, it runs down mountains as rivers.  
5) Some water soaks into the ground and flows in rivers that are under the ground.  
6) How water in rivers becomes clouds, then rainfall, then runoff, then rivers that are under the ground.

### **4 Complete using the following words:**

- \* rivers - deeper - sea.  
\* ground - surface - lake - cycle

### **5 Read the water facts then answer:**

- 1) False              2) True              3) False  
4) False              5) True

## **\*\*Lesson (3)\*\***

### **1 Supply the missing letters :**

- camel - dry - hooves
- cactus - hump - wet
- map - spines - tube
- skin - fur - roots
- spring - summer - winter
- fall - hundred - thousand

### **2 Match (A) with (B):**

- 1) It doesn't often rain here.  
2) There is a lot of rain here for most of the year.  
3) There is water on the ground here.

- 4) The water here is ice.

- 5) There is a lot of rain in fall and winter. There is less in spring and summer.

### **3 Read the passage and answer:**

- A) 1- They change the way they behave in order to survive in their habitat.

- 2- Plants need water to grow, and animals need to drink to live.

### **B) Write T (True) or F (False)**

- 1- (x)              2- (✓)              3- (x)  
4- (x)              5- (✓)              6- (x)

### **4 Circle the word with the (e) sound:**

- 1) acacia              2) cheetah              3) under  
4) shelter              5) doctor

## **\*- Unit (5) Test (5) \*-\***

### **1 Supply the missing parts:**

- Have you ever climbed a mountain?
- Yes, I do.

### **2 Supply the missing letters:**

- oasis - shade - evaporation
- river - fall - spines

### **3 Choose the correct word:**

- 1- Have    2- river    3- lived    4- condenses  
5- never    6- shelter    7- eaten    8- spring

### **4 Rewrite the following sentences:**

- 1- Have you ever eaten dates?  
2- He has seen lots of beautiful birds.  
3- No, I haven't.  
4- She has given me her pen.

### **5 Read the following passage:**

- A) 1- It's very hot.                      2- Yes, it is.  
B) 3- windy                              4- sunny

### **6 Write a paragraph of four sentences:**

Water is very important. Humans need to drink water every day. Animals need water to live. Plants need water to grow.

## **Unit (6)**

## **\*\*Lesson (1)\*\***

### **1 Supply the missing letters:**

- flood - canal - drain
- dam - barrier - pump
- sandbag - pipe - rain
- lightning - airport - street

**2 Choose the word(s):**

- 1) flood 2) dam 3) drain 4) pump  
5) pipes 6) canal 7) barrier 8) sandbags

**3 Read the following passage:**

- A) 1- There was a flood in Egypt.  
2- Because there was a flood.  
B) 3- closed 4- Cairo

**\*\*Lesson (2)\*\***

**1 Choose the word(s): (Vocabulary)**

- 1) minimize 2) wash away 3) install  
4) protect 5) ruin 6) collapse

**2 Choose the word(s): (Structures)**

- 1) many 2) much 3) enough  
4) enough 5) are 6) is 7) isn't  
8) aren't 9) much 10) enough 11) many  
12) enough 13) is 14) is 15) is 16) are

**3 Read the following passage:**

- A) 1- Flood water can ruin homes, shops,  
and offices. It can wash away roads or  
make bridges and homes collapse.  
2- We can minimize the dangerous  
effects of flooding.

- B) 3- Meteorologists 4- pumps

**C) Read again and match:**

- 1) to damage or destroy something.  
2) to carry something away with water.  
3) to fall down. 4) to keep something safe.  
5) to say what might happen in the future.  
6) to tell people that something bad will  
happen, so they can prepare.  
7) to put something in.  
8) to make something smaller or less.

**4 Rewrite the following sentences:**

- 1) There are too many glasses of water.  
2) There isn't enough money to buy the  
T-shirt.  
3) There aren't enough cups. Or: We don't  
have enough cups.  
4) There's too much bread in the kitchen.  
5) There are too many trees in the garden.  
6) There are too many cups of coffee.  
7) There aren't enough books  
8) There isn't enough cheese to make  
sandwiches. Or: We don't have enough  
cheese to make sandwiches.  
9) There are too many cars in the streets  
of the city.

- 10) There is too much sugar in her tea.

**\*\*Lesson (3)\*\***

**1 Write the words in the correct:**

| Negative | Positive       |
|----------|----------------|
| bossy    | brave - polite |
| cowardly | wise - loyal   |
| lazy     | cooperative    |
| mean     | generous       |
| selfish  | responsible    |
| moody    | caring         |

**2 Circle two correct words of each:**

- funny / bossy - moody / selfish  
- calm / generous - polite / cooperative  
- responsible / brave

**3 Read the passage and answer:**

- A) Put a (✓) or (×):

- 1- (×) 2- (✓) 3- (×) 4- (✓)

- B) Find words in the text that mean...:

- 1) dangerous 2) rescue 3) scary  
4) heavy rainfall 5) sick / injured

**\*\*Lesson (4)\*\***

**1 Supply the missing letters:**

- farmer - well - irrigation  
- soil - spray - drip  
- Ancient Egyptians - statue - farm

**2 Read the following passage:**

- A) Answer the following questions:

- 1) From wells, canals or rivers.  
2) Pumps.  
3) It can take too much water out of rivers,  
lakes, and springs.  
4) Because it covers a whole field in water.

- B) Put a (✓) or (×):

- 1- (×) 2- (×) 3- (✓) 4- (✓)

**\*\*Lesson (5)\*\***

**1 Read the following passage:**

- A) Answer the following questions:

- 1) 2,500 years old.  
2) More than 200. 3) Six.  
4) Because of gravity.  
5) Because it's the largest dam in the world  
6) To higher ground. 7) Salt.  
8) It uses a lot of energy.

- B) Write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- (×) 2- (✓) 3- (×) 4- (×)  
5- (✓) 6- (✓) 7- (×) 8- (×)



## 2 Match (A) with (B):

- 1) taking salt out of seawater.
- 2) it carries water long distances.
- 3) it turns around like a wheel.
- 4) a lake created by stopping water in a river.
- 5) a wheel that uses running water to create energy.

### \*- \* Unit (6) Test (6) \*- \*

## 1 Supply the missing parts:

- No, I don't.
- I have only three pounds.

## 2 Supply the missing letters:

- waterwheel - bucket - flood
- pump - irrigation - Ancient Egyptians

## 3 Choose the correct word:

- 1- High Dam 2- much 3- volunteer
- 4- enough 5- pipes 6- many
- 7- drains 8- isn't

## 4 Rewrite the following sentences:

- 1- There are too many plates of meat.
- 2- There isn't enough water for deserts to be green land.
- 3- There is too much salt in his food.
- 4- There aren't enough pencils for my friends. Or: I don't have enough pencils for my friends.

## 5 Read the following passage:

- A) 1- Near Benha. 2- Seven.  
B) 3- happy 4- cows

## 6 Write a paragraph of four sentences:

It's a shadoof. It's very old. It was used in an oasis in the desert. It worked when a bucket went into a well and brought up water.

## Part (2) Final Revision

### Revision on unit (1)

## 1 Supply the missing letters:

- track / athlete / measure
- jump / throw / run
- win / race / medal
- field / distance / competition
- exercise / warm up / healthy food
- friend / parents / apologize
- sad / happy / scared
- swimming / city / citadel
- space / bicycle / footballer
- score / national team / cup
- cyclist / pyramids / heart
- map / famous / meter

## 2 Choose the word(s): (Vocabulary)

- 1) record 2) track 3) warm up
- 4) second 5) athlete 6) Exercise
- 7) race 8) far 9) medal 10) support
- 11) compete 12) cyclist 13) win
- 14) fast 15) train 16) kilometer
- 17) healthy 18) distance 19) measures
- 20) fit 21) high 22) challenge

## 3 Choose the word(s): (Structures)

- 1) will win 2) come 3) won't 4) won't
- 5) will 6) won't 7) get
- 8) will be 9) Will 10) will

## 4 Choose the word(s): (Adjectives)

- 1) faster 2) highest 3) slower than
- 4) the fastest 5) the highest 6) father
- 7) faster 8) the farthest

## 5 Choose the word(s): (Structures)

- 1) so 2) and 3) so 4) or 5) but 6) because

## 6 Read the check (✓) or cross (×):

- 1- (×) 2- (✓) 3- (×) 4- (✓) 5- (✓)

## 7 Read and order:

- 1- How far can she jump?
- 2- How fast can he run?
- 3- How far can she throw the ball?
- 4- How high can he jump?

## 8 Write sentences showing:

|                       |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| Good friends<br>never | Good friends<br>should |
| spread rumors         | listen                 |

|                  |           |
|------------------|-----------|
| make fun of      | support   |
| tell secrets     | have fun  |
| pressure someone | apologize |

**9 Circle the different (c) sound:**

- 1- city      2- ice      3- cake      4- race

**10 Read and tick:**

- 1- hour      2- centimeter  
3- kilometer      4- second

**11 Rewrite the following sentences:**

- 1- Will you make fun of your friend?
  - 2- How fast can she run?
  - 3- Samy can jump farther than Ziad.
  - 4- It won't be easy to win today.
  - 5- I don't like high jump or long jump.
  - 6- Will he play tennis?
  - 7- Yes, he will.
  - 8- How far can he jump?
  - 9- He went to bed late so he was late for school.
- Or: He was late for school because he went to bed late.
- 10- He will wear a red T-shirt tomorrow.
  - 11- Cycling is her favorite sport but she is not a fast cyclist.
  - 12- How fast can she run?
  - 13- He is good at football and tennis
  - 14- No, I won't.
  - 15- The winner will be happy.
  - 16- He will win the competition because he's training hard
  - 17- I will meet my friends.

**Unit (1) Test (1)**

**1 Supply the missing parts:**

- I will go to the club.
- Will you meet your friends there?

**2 Supply the missing letters:**

- track - apologize - swimming
- cyclist - athlete - winner

**3 Choose the correct word:**

- 1) won't    2) higher    3) but    4) slowest  
5) so    6) will win    7) often    8) run

**4 Rewrite the following sentences:**

- 1) He will get a medal tomorrow.
- 2) She trains every day because she wants to win a medal.
- 3) I don't like basketball or handball.

- 4) Will she throw the ball.

**5 Read the following passage:**

A-1- He wants to compete in the school long jump competition.

2- He warms up with him and measures the distance he jumps.

B- 3- third      4- three

**6 Write a paragraph of four sentences:**

Football is my hobby. I go to the club every week. I play it with my friends. I sometimes play it at school. I want to be a famous player.

**Revision on unit (2)**

**1 Supply the missing letters:**

- brain / skeleton / heart
- lungs / bone / knee
- ribs / elbow / jaw
- leg / arm / helmet
- wear / mountain / park
- rock / sunglasses / pad
- climb / tired / cross
- relaxed / hungry / fruit
- vegetables / candies / soda
- breakfast / lunch / dinner
- cup / juice / sleep
- angry / skin / germs
- sunscreen / hot / cook
- top / middle / bottom
- weather / wood / food
- body / stomach / mouth
- teeth / tongue / moon

**2 Choose the word(s): (Vocabulary)**

- 1) muscles    2) Bones    3) heart  
4) oxygen and nutrients    5) skin    6) Oxygen  
7) Arteries    8) skull    9) nutrients    10) blood

**3 Choose the word(s): (Structures)**

- 1) is    2) are    3) am    4) are    5) is    6) are  
7) going    8) going    9) go    10) wear    11) is  
12) always    13) to    14) isn't    15) go  
16) is going to wear    17) Are

**4 Complete the sentences using:**

- 1) heart    2) skin    3) lungs  
4) arteries    5) muscles    6) skeleton  
7) skull    8) saliva    9) stomach    10) tongue



**5 Match (A) with (B):**

- 1) breaks down food in our stomach.
- 2) the sun, as well as dirt and germs.
- 3) soft organs such our heart and lungs.
- 4) oxygen and nutrients around the body.
- 5) in our veins, because it is used in the body.
- 6) chew food, to move our jaw.

**6 Read and complete:**

- 1- Veins      2- blood      3- nutrients
- 4- Arteries      5- blood vessels

**7 Read and circle:**

- 1- liquid      2- gas      3- without      4- with

**8 Write in the correct table:**

| Long 'oo' sound | Short 'oo' sound |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1) room         | 1) foot          |
| 2) tool         | 2) good          |
| 3) root         | 3) wood          |

**9 Rewrite the following sentences:**

- 1- Is he going to ride a horse?
- 2- I'm going to visit my grandparents
- 3- No, they aren't.
- 4- We're not going to do exercise after school.
- 5- She's going to play with her friends tomorrow.
- 6- Are you going to watch TV?
- 7- No, I'm not.                      8- Yes, she is.
- 9- Is he going to help at home?
- 10- We're going to go to Alex next week.

**Unit (2) Test (2)**

**1 Supply the missing parts:**

- Yes, I am.
- What are you going to go there?

**2 Supply the missing letters:**

- skeleton - sunscreen - tongue
- knee - heart - bone

**3 Choose the correct word:**

- 1) going    2) is    3) brain    4) is going to buy
- 5) climb    6) never    7) tired    8) have

**4 Rewrite the following sentences:**

- 1) We're going to ride our bikes on Friday.
- 2) He's not going to go to the club.
- 3) Is she going to wear her sunglasses?
- 4) I'm going to have a walk.

**5 Read the following passage:**

- A-1- Fady is going to ride his bicycle in the morning.
- 2- Farida is going to clean her bedroom in the morning.

- B- 3- four                      4- watch TV

**6 Write a paragraph of four sentences:**

The human body is very amazing. We have thirty two teeth. We have 206 bones. They are strong and hard. We should eat the food that is good for our body. We shouldn't eat the food that is bad for our body.

**Revision on unit (3)**

**1 Supply the missing letters:**

- sugar / dairy / balance
- plate / strong / apple
- drink / eat / banana
- bread / pasta / rice
- eggs / cereal / fish
- meat / olive oil / milk
- cheese / cake / biscuit
- animals / plants / water
- roots / tea / ill
- cookies / cold / salt
- chocolate brownie / can / jar
- pot / fire / mango
- salt / grapes / fridge
- heat / pollution / fire station
- dentist / teaspoon / list

**2 Choose the word(s): (Vocabulary)**

- 1) sugar      2) Calories      3) dehydrated
- 4) preserve      5) carbohydrates      6) vitamins
- 7) protein      8) fats      9) carbohydrates
- 10) fiber      11) mineral      12) protein
- 13) dry      14) Fats      15) liquid      16) Blood
- 17) Carbohydrates      18) toxins      19) sweat
- 20) salt      21) stomach      22) store
- 23) containers

**3 Choose the word(s): (Vocabulary)**

- 1) vitamins    2) Carbohydrates    3) Protein
- 4) bones    5) oils    6) cake    7) sugar

**4 Read and circle:**

- teeth / heart / short / long / too much / worried

**5 Choose the word(s): (Structures)**

- 1) should      2) drink      3) you shouldn't

- 4) should 5) shouldn't 6) go 7) eat  
8) you shouldn't 9) drink 10) Should

**6 Complete the sentences using:**

- 1- should 2- should 3- shouldn't  
4- shouldn't

**7 Read and complete :**

- 1- should train 2- He shouldn't skip  
3- He shouldn't eat 4- He should eat  
5- He shouldn't drink 6- He should drink

**8 Do the quiz:**

- 1- From the soil. 2- 82 % 3- 75 %  
4- You feel tired and you can't think.  
5- 1.5 liters

**9 Rewrite the following sentences:**

- 1- You should drink pure water.  
2- Should I eat unhealthy food?  
3- You shouldn't have sweet snacks.  
4- No, you shouldn't.  
5- You shouldn't drink soda  
6- You should always be hydrated.  
7- Should you drink enough water?  
8- You shouldn't have an unhealthy body.  
9- You should make your body strong.  
10- No, I shouldn't.

**Unit (3) Test (3)**

**1 Supply the missing parts:**

- What time do you get up?  
- I usually have milk, cheese and jam.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**

- dairy - fridge - fruit  
- sugar - teeth - vegetables

**3 Choose the correct word:**

- 1) Calcium 2) should 3) dairy 4) drink  
5) hydrated 6) sugar 7) you should 8) soil

**4 Rewrite the following sentences:**

- 1) You should do exercise.  
2) Yes, you should.  
3) You shouldn't sleep for only five hours.  
4) Should you drink lots of sweet drinks?

**5 Read the following passage:**

- A-1- Every Thursday.  
2- Tomatoes, peas, potatoes and lettuce. B- 3- Ice cream 4- juice

**6 Write a paragraph of four sentences:**

You shouldn't eat too many sweets. You shouldn't eat crisps, biscuits or chocolate. You should eat fish, meat, vegetables and fruit. You shouldn't drink soda. You should drink enough water.

**Revision on unit (4)**

**1 Supply the missing letters:**

- wildlife / tail / ears
- insect / river / grass
- stick / leaves / chase
- hunt / hide / turtle
- owl / goose / rabbit
- penguin / whale / fox
- elephant / lion / meat
- world / ground / desert
- rainforest / feathers / birds
- spider / butterfly / lizard
- frog / snake / touch
- smell / hear / sea
- rain / tent / volcano
- garbage / machine / office
- factory / smoke / storm
- lake / city / farm

**2 Match (A) with (B):**

- 1) It lives in the sea.  
2) It takes shelter under rocks in rivers.  
3) It's long and thin and doesn't have legs.  
4) It sleeps a lot and moves very slowly.  
5) It lives in a hole in a tree.  
6) It digs a burrow and lives in the desert.

**3 Complete the sentences using:**

- 1- rainforest 2- desert 3- equator  
4- wetland 5- polar zone  
6- temperate zone

**4 Read and circle:**

- snow / aren't any / burrows / warm / rivers / trees

**5 Read and choose:**

- 1- Equator 2- South Pole  
3- Grassland 4- Wetland and Desert

**6 Choose the word(s): (Vocabulary)**

- 1) North Pole 2) hunt 3) sloth  
4) tropical 5) Cobra 6) Swamp  
7) Butterflies 8) Equator 9) Lizards  
10) Pollution 11) disaster 12) Swamps



**7 Choose the word(s): (Structures)**

- 1) might not 2) might 3) eat 4) Was  
5) might 6) Was 7) might 8) had  
9) climb 10) look 11) might not  
12) moved 13) build 14) Was  
15) might not 16) saw 17) wasn't 18) dig

**Unit (4) Test (4)**

**1 Supply the missing parts:**

- Were you at school yesterday?
- I went to the park.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**

- penguin - fire - garbage
- rainforest - nest - desert

**3 Choose the correct word:**

- 1) might not 2) South Pole 3) went  
4) Macaw 5) nests 6) might not  
7) Volcanoes 8) live

**4 Rewrite the following sentences:**

- 1) Was it a fennec fox?  
2) What did you love seeing?  
3) I might go out with my friends.  
4) He might not come with us.

**5 Read the following passage:**

- A-1- We sometimes visit the zoo in summer. 2- It likes water.  
B- 3- big 4- bananas

**6 Write a paragraph of four sentences:**

The lion is a wild animal. It lives in the forest. It eats other small animals. It's dangerous. We can see it at the zoo.

**Revision on unit (5)**

**1 Supply the missing letters:**

- oasis / river / shade
- lake / mountain / desert
- herbs / olive oil / storm
- monuments / ground / wood
- palm tree / dates / plants
- medicine / sick / farmer
- tree / flowers / basket
- bowl / spoon / family
- earth / evaporation / condensation
- cloud / sea / wind
- sky / rain / experiment
- cactus / camel / hooves
- hump / spines / tube

- skin / fur / roots
- winter / summer / fall
- spring / map / drink

**2 Choose the word(s): (Vocabulary)**

- 1) adapted 2) river 3) condenses  
4) shelter 5) spring 6) salt  
7) hooves 8) oasis 9) spearmint  
10) evaporate 11) sandstorm  
12) condenses 13) Deserts 14) survive  
15) medicine 16) Cactus 17) palm  
18) farmer 19) shade 20) humps 21) fur

**3 Choose the word(s): (Structures)**

- 1) has 2) have 3) have 4) has 5) have  
6) has 7) have 8) Have 9) visited  
10) lived 11) haven't 12) never 13) taken  
14) have lived 15) Have 16) swum

**4 Correct the verbs as in the example:**

- 2) hasn't eaten 3) has traveled  
4) haven't seen 5) have slept

**5 Look and write as in the example:**

- 2) Has he ever climbed a tower?  
- No, he hasn't  
3) Has she ever swum in the sea?  
- Yes, she has.  
4) Have they ever flown a helicopter?  
- No, they haven't.  
5) Have you ever seen a cobra?  
- No, I haven't.  
6) Has it ever rained in the desert?  
- Yes, it has.

**6 Rewrite the following sentences:**

- 1- Have you ever eaten dates?  
2- He has seen lots of beautiful birds.  
3- No, I haven't.  
4- She has given me her pen.  
5- They have seen lots of interesting places.  
6- Have you ever tried Siwan food?  
7- Yes, I have.  
8- I have given my mum a present.

**Unit (5) Test (5)**

**1 Supply the missing parts:**

- I drink 1.5 liters of fresh water.
- From wells, lakes or rivers.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**

- desert - sick - water
- condensation - hooves - oasis



**3 Choose the correct word:**

- 1) spring 2) seen 3) herbs 4) ever  
5) rivers 6) eaten 7) Precipitation 8) never

**4 Rewrite the following sentences:**

- 1) Have you ever seen a snake?  
2) He has taken lots of sandwiches.  
3) No, I haven't.  
4) She has swum in the swimming pool.

**5 Read the following passage:**

A-1- In summer, the weather is very hot.  
2- In fall.

B- 3- seasons 4- winter

**6 Write a paragraph of four sentences:**

The camel is a big animal. It's perfect for the desert life. It has long eyelashes and nose to keep the sand out. It has wide feet to walk on the sand. It has humps to store food and water.

**Revision on unit (6)**

**1 Supply the missing letters:**

- flood / dam / pump
- drain / pipe / canal
- sandbag / builder / lightning
- rain / ground / build
- river / airport / port
- street / scientist / engineer
- shop / office / road
- bridge / weather / injured
- scared / pleased / firefighter
- police officer / present / boat
- train / friend / farm
- irrigation / spray / drip
- field / statue / Ancient Egyptians
- waterwheel / machine / castle
- bucket / temple / home

**2 Choose the word(s): (Vocabulary)**

- 1) High Dam 2) waterwheels 3) flood  
4) volunteer 5) collapse 6) wells  
7) pipes 8) protect 9) drains  
10) Meteorologists 11) dam 12) warn  
13) pump 14) aqueducts 15) emergency  
16) canal 17) rescue 18) barrier  
19) sandbags 20) Desalination

**3 Read and complete:**

- \* rivers – waterwheel – irrigation
- \* citadel – tower – canal

\* turbines – electricity

\* fresh water – technologies

**4 Read and choose:**

- 1) dam 2) oasis 3) sandbags  
4) wash away 5) not much fresh water

**5 Correct the verbs as in the example:**

- 1) are 2) is 3) is 4) are 5) much  
6) enough 7) many 8) isn't 9) are  
10) is 11) isn't 12) aren't 13) much  
14) enough 15) many 16) enough

**6 Circle the word:**

- 1- cobra 2- water 3- enormous  
4- wetland 5- nervous

**7 Rewrite the following sentences:**

- 1- There are too many plates of meal.  
2- There isn't enough water for deserts to be green land.  
3- There is too much salt in his food.  
4- There aren't enough pencils to give my friends.  
5- There are too many bottles of water.  
6- There isn't enough money to buy the skirt.  
7- There are too many trees in the park.  
8- There aren't enough books for pupils in the class.  
9- There are too many people in the streets of Cairo.  
10- There is too much salt in her pizza.

**Unit (6) Test (6)**

**1 Supply the missing parts:**

- No, you can't. - Why?

**2 Supply the missing letters:**

- pipe – farmer – canal  
- waterwheel – airport – pump

**3 Choose the correct word:**

- 1) ruin 2) enough 3) drain 4) many  
5) irrigation 6) enough 7) pipes 8) much

**4 Rewrite the following sentences:**

- 1) There aren't enough cups.  
2) There is too much bread in the kitchen.  
3) There are too many cups of coffee.  
4) There isn't enough cheese to make sandwiches.



**5 Read the following passage:**

A-1- Parks are places with lots of grass, trees, plants and flowers.

2- People can go, play and relax there. Lots of people like having their picnics there.

B- 3- bins                      4- picnics

**6 Write a paragraph of four sentences:**

The life in deserts is a hard life. There is little rain. There is little water. It's hot and dry. There aren't many animals. There aren't many people there. They live in tents or houses made of mud bricks.

**Part (3) school Exams**

**Test (1)**

**1 Supply the missing parts:**

- I can run 90 meters in 40 seconds.  
- Will you win the race?

**2 Supply the missing letters:**

- flood - tongue - sugar  
- oasis - volcano - athlete

**3 Choose the correct word:**

1) track 2) will win 3) deserts 4) going  
5) vitamins 6) ever 7) might not  
8) North Pole

**4 Rewrite the following sentences:**

1) Will he play tennis?  
2) You shouldn't have an unhealthy body.  
3) It didn't have a long tail.  
4) There aren't enough cups.

**5 Read the following passage:**

A- 1- It was warm and sunny.

2- At five o'clock in the afternoon.

B- 3- nice                      4- happy

**6 Write a paragraph of four sentences:**

Manar is my best friend. She's nine years old. She's in grade three. She likes reading and painting. She hopes to be a doctor in the future.

**Test (2)**

**1 Supply the missing parts:**

- Yes, I am.  
- I'm going to fly my kite.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**

- stomach - race - waterwheel  
- rainforest - shade - roots

**3 Choose the correct word:**

1) warm up 2) won't 3) to 4) aren't  
5) shouldn't 6) oasis 7) visited 8) flood

**4 Rewrite the following sentences:**

1) I don't like fish or chicken.  
2) Have you ever tried Siwan food?  
3) It won't be easy to win today.  
4) There is too much bread in the kitchen.



**5 Read the following passage:**

- A- 1- Good nutrition can help prevent health problems. 2- prevent – tips  
B- 3- plenty 4- weight

**6 Write a paragraph of four sentences:**

Allah is a great creator. Look at the nature around us. There are mountains, hills and lakes. There are also islands, forests, seas rivers and oceans. The weather is different. It might be cold, hot, warm or cool.

**Test (3)**

**1 Supply the missing parts:**

- No, I don't.  
- How often do you drink water.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**

- brain – dam – pot  
- mountain – friends – world

**3 Choose the correct word:**

- 1) drain 2) higher 3) nutrients 4) enough  
5) protein 6) go 7) might 8) hunt

**4 Rewrite the following sentences:**

- 1) Football is my favorite sport but I'm not a good footballer.  
2) She might not drink orange juice.  
3) I have given my mum a present.  
4) There are too many trees in the garden.

**5 Read the following passage:**

- A- 1- Because it allows your body to rest for the next day.  
2- You can feel tired, sad or angry.  
B- 3- better 4- ten

**6 Write a paragraph of four sentences:**

Rainforests grow in hot countries. There are lots of plants and trees there. Animals and birds live in rainforests. They are useful to the environment. Rain forests are in danger because people cut down trees.

**Test (4)**

**1 Supply the missing parts:**

- Do you eat healthy food?  
- Yes. Meat and fish.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**

- desert – fire – winner  
- pump – lake – skeleton

**3 Choose the correct word:**

- 1) athletes 2) because  
3) oxygen and nutrients 4) is going to buy  
5) dairy 6) eat 7) drain 8) sloth

**4 Rewrite the following sentences:**

- 1) She will win the first medal because she's training hard.  
2) No, I haven't.  
3) There are too many cars in the streets of the city.  
4) Should you drink lots of sweet drinks?

**5 Read the following passage:**

- A- 1- Deserts are generally hot, dry regions.  
2- They are sandy hills.  
3- The Sahara Desert is the biggest desert in the world. It measures about 8 million square kilometers.  
B- 4- nine million 5- Africa

**6 Write a paragraph of four sentences:**

My uncle's farm is large. He grows grains. He keeps animals. He has machines on his farm. He produces lots of crops.

**Test (5)**

**1 Supply the missing parts:**

- I might watch a movie.  
- Yes, I will.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**

- medal – heart – hump  
- fridge – drain – hunt

**3 Choose the correct word:**

- 1) cyclist 2) so 3) blood 4) Are  
5) fats 6) volunteer 7) is 8) seen

**4 Rewrite the following sentences:**

- 1) I was hungry so I ate all my sandwiches.  
2) He is good at throwing and jumping.  
3) Where did you go?  
4) You should always be hydrated.

**5 Read the following passage:**

- A- 1- They will be modern and more beautiful.  
2- They may eat some new kinds of food.  
B- 3- home 4- better



**⑥ Write a paragraph of four sentences:**  
Football is my favorite sport. I play it in the club. I play it with my friends. My favorite player is Mohamed Salah. I hope to be a famous player.

### Test (6)

**① Supply the missing parts:**

- Running.
- How often do you go to the track?

**② Supply the missing letters:**

- pipe - pollution - lungs
- distance - insect - cactus

**③ Choose the correct word:**

- 1) race 2) run 3) skin 4) climb
- 5) Calcium 6) much 7) climb 8) Have

**④ Rewrite the following sentences:**

- 1) She will (is going to) play with her friends tomorrow.
- 2) He has taken lots of sandwiches.
- 3) There isn't enough cheese to make sandwiches.
- 4) Yes, you should.

**⑤ Read the following passage:**

- A- 1- Crocodiles are dangerous animals.  
2- They hide in water to catch animals which come to drink. A crocodile hits with its head or tail and then pulls the animal to eat it under water.

- B- 3- crocodiles 4- teeth

**⑥ Write a paragraph of four sentences:**

It's important to be fit. You should be healthy. You should eat and drink fresh and healthy foods and drinks. You should exercise. You can go to the club with your friends to train there.

### Test (7)

**① Supply the missing parts:**

- No, I haven't.
- Monuments, springs of water, plants, trees and animals.

**② Supply the missing letters:**

- chase - heat - condensation
- throw - bone - sandbag

**③ Choose the correct word:**

- 1) support 2) the farthest 3) skull

- 4) isn't 5) carbohydrates 6) you should
- 7) tropical 8) palm

**④ Rewrite the following sentences:**

- 1) We are going to ride our bikes on Friday.
- 2) You should do exercise.
- 3) I might wash my dad's car.
- 4) He came fourth in the race because he didn't work hard.

**⑤ Read the following passage:**

- A- 1- Exercise, food and sleep are the keys for good health.

- 2- To be healthy and have energy.

- B- 3- fun 4- good

**⑥ Write a paragraph of four sentences:**

We went to the zoo last holiday. We went in my father's car. We saw lots of animals. We enjoyed a lot. We ate and drank there. We spent a nice time. We were happy.

### Test (8)

**① Supply the missing parts:**

- What's this book about?
- Yes. Our national team has won the African Cup the most times in Africa.

**② Supply the missing letters:**

- jar - ribs - jump
- wildlife - barrier - evaporation

**③ Choose the correct word:**

- 1) record 2) or 3) heart 4) have
- 5) isn't 6) never 7) dig 8) enough

**④ Rewrite the following sentences:**

- 1) He's not going to go to the club.
- 2) Have you ever seen a snake?
- 3) There aren't enough books for pupils in the class.
- 4) Will she throw the ball?

**⑤ Read the following passage:**

- A- 1- He is 35 years old.

- 2- Because he can help sick people.

- B- 3- teacher 4- white cat

**⑥ Write a paragraph of four sentences:**

My school is clean and tidy. It's very useful to us. Teachers there help us a lot. We play and enjoy in the break. We go to the library to read. I like my school.